

**Reprint
as at 7 July 2010**



Copyright Act 1994

Public Act 1994 No 143
Date of assent 15 December 1994
Commencement see section 1(2)

Contents

	Page
Title	12
1 Short Title and commencement	12
2 Interpretation	12
3 Associated definitions for communication works	24
4 Meaning of cable programme service, and associated definitions [<i>Repealed</i>]	24
5 Meaning of author	24
6 Meaning of work of joint authorship	25
7 Meaning of unknown authorship	25
8 Meaning of copyright owner	26
9 Meaning of issue to the public	26
10 Meaning of publication	27
11 Meaning of commercial publication	29
12 Meaning of infringing copy	29
13 Act to bind the Crown	31

Note

Changes authorised by section 17C of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989 have been made in this reprint.

A general outline of these changes is set out in the notes at the end of this reprint, together with other explanatory material about this reprint.

This Act is administered by the Ministry of Economic Development.

Part 1		
Description, ownership, and duration of copyright		
<i>Description of copyright</i>		
14	Copyright in original works	31
15	Recording necessary for some works	32
16	Acts restricted by copyright	32
<i>Qualification for copyright</i>		
17	Qualification for copyright	32
18	Qualification by reference to author	33
19	Qualification by reference to country of first publication	34
20	Qualification by reference to origin of communication work	34
<i>Ownership of copyright</i>		
21	First ownership of copyright	34
<i>Duration of copyright</i>		
22	Duration of copyright in literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works	35
23	Duration of copyright in sound recordings and films	36
24	Duration of copyright in communication works	37
25	Duration of copyright in typographical arrangement of published editions	37
<i>Crown copyright</i>		
26	Crown copyright	37
27	No copyright in certain works	38
28	Copyright vesting in certain international organisations	39
Part 2		
Infringement of copyright		
<i>Primary infringement of copyright</i>		
29	Infringement of copyright	40
30	Infringement by copying	41
31	Infringement by issue of copies to public	41
32	Infringement by performance or playing or showing in public	41
33	Infringement by communicating to public	42
34	Infringement by making adaptation or act done in relation to adaptation	42
<i>Secondary infringement of copyright</i>		
35	Infringement by importation	42

36	Possessing or dealing with infringing copy	44
37	Providing means for making infringing copies	44
38	Permitting use of premises for infringing performance	45
39	Provision of apparatus for infringing performance, etc	45

Part 3

Acts permitted in relation to copyright works

40	Provisions to be construed independently	46
41	Incidental copying of copyright work	46
42	Criticism, review, and news reporting	47
43	Research or private study	47
43A	Transient reproduction of work	48

Education

44	Copying for educational purposes of literary, dramatic, musical or artistic works or typographical arrangements	49
44A	Storing copies for educational purposes	51
45	Copying for educational purposes of films and sound recordings	52
46	Anthologies for educational use	53
47	Performing, playing, or showing work in course of activities of educational establishment	54
48	Copying and communication of communication work for educational purposes	54
49	Things done for purposes of examination	56

Libraries and archives

50	Interpretation	56
51	Copying by librarians of parts of published works	57
52	Copying by librarians of articles in periodicals	58
53	Copying by librarians for users of other libraries	59
54	Copying by librarians for collections of other libraries	60
55	Copying by librarians or archivists to replace copies of works	61
56	Copying by librarians or archivists of certain unpublished works	62
56A	Library or archive may communicate digital copy to authenticated users	63
56B	Additional conditions for supply of copy of work in digital format by librarian or archivist under section 51, 52, or 56	64
56C	Additional condition for making digital copies under section 53 or 54	64
57	Playing or showing sound recordings or films	64

	<i>Public administration</i>	
58	Copying by Parliamentary Library for members of Parliament	65
59	Parliamentary and judicial proceedings	66
60	Royal commissions and statutory inquiries	66
61	Material open to public inspection or on official register	66
62	Material communicated to the Crown in course of public business	68
63	Use of copyright material for services of the Crown	68
64	Rights of third parties in respect of Crown use	69
65	Proceedings against the Crown	70
66	Acts done under statutory authority	70
	<i>Literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works</i>	
67	Acts permitted on assumptions as to expiry of copyright or death of author in relation to anonymous or pseudonymous works	70
68	Use of recording of spoken words in certain cases	71
69	Provision of Braille copies of literary or dramatic works	72
70	Public reading or recitation	73
71	Abstracts of scientific or technical articles	73
72	Recordings of folk songs	74
73	Representation of certain artistic works on public display	74
74	Special exception from protection of literary or artistic works	75
75	Special exception from protection of artistic work that has been applied industrially	76
76	Special exception from protection of literary and artistic works relating to medicines	77
77	Making of subsequent works by same artist	77
78	Reconstruction of buildings	78
	<i>Computer programs, sound recordings, and films</i>	
79	Rental by educational establishments and libraries	78
80	Back-up copy of computer program	78
80A	Decompilation of computer program	79
80B	Copying or adapting computer program if necessary for lawful use	80
80C	Observing, studying, or testing of computer program	81
80D	Certain contractual terms relating to use of computer programs have no effect	81
81	Playing of sound recordings for purposes of club, society, etc	81

81A	Copying sound recording for personal use	82
	<i>Communication works</i>	
82	Recording for purposes of maintaining standards in programmes	83
83	Recording for purposes of complaining	83
84	Recording for purposes of time shifting	83
85	Incidental recording for purposes of communication	84
86	Photographs of television broadcasts or cable programmes [<i>Repealed</i>]	86
87	Free public playing or showing of broadcast or cable programme	86
88	Reception and retransmission of broadcast in cable programme service	88
89	Provision of subtitled copies of communication work	89
90	Recording for archival purposes	89
91	Recording by media monitors	90
	<i>Adaptations</i>	
92	Adaptations	91
	<i>Internet service provider liability</i>	
92A	Internet service provider must have policy for terminating accounts of repeat infringers	91
92B	Internet service provider liability if user infringes copyright	92
92C	Internet service provider liability for storing infringing material	92
92D	Requirements for notice of infringement	93
92E	Internet service provider does not infringe copyright by caching infringing material	93
	<i>Subsequent dealings</i>	
93	Subsequent dealings with copies made under this Part	94
	Part 4	
	Moral rights	
	<i>Right to be identified as author or director</i>	
94	Right to be identified as author or director	96
95	Content of right to be identified	98
96	Right must be asserted	99
97	Exceptions to right to be identified	101

<i>Right to object to derogatory treatment of work</i>		
98	Right to object to derogatory treatment of work	102
99	Content of right to object to derogatory treatment	103
100	Exceptions to right to object to derogatory treatment of literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work	105
101	Exceptions to right to object to derogatory treatment of films	107
<i>False attribution</i>		
102	False attribution of identity of author or director	108
103	False representation as to literary, dramatic, or musical work	110
104	False representations as to artistic work	111
<i>Right to privacy of certain photographs and films</i>		
105	Right to privacy of certain photographs and films	112
<i>Supplementary provisions</i>		
106	Duration of rights	113
107	Consent and waiver of rights	114
108	Application of provisions to joint works other than films	114
109	Application of provisions to joint works that are films	115
110	Application of provisions to parts of works	116
Part 5		
Dealing with rights in copyright works		
<i>Licences to deal with copyright works</i>		
111	Licences	117
112	Warranty implied in certain licences	117
112A	Damages for falsely claiming copyright ownership or licence	118
112B	Provisions of sections 112 and 112A to have effect no matter what licence says	118
<i>Transmission of copyright</i>		
113	Transmission of copyright	118
114	Assignment	119
115	Copyright to pass under will with unpublished works	119
116	Future copyright	119
117	Right to make conditions in respect of certain unpublished works	120
<i>Moral rights</i>		
118	Moral rights not assignable	121

119	Transmission of moral rights on death	121
-----	---------------------------------------	-----

Part 6
Remedies for infringement

Rights and remedies of copyright owner

120	Infringement actionable by copyright owner	122
121	Provisions as to damages in infringement proceedings	122
122	Order for delivery up in civil proceedings	123

Rights and remedies of exclusive licensee

123	Rights and remedies of exclusive licensee	124
124	Exercise of concurrent rights	124

Rights and remedies in relation to moral rights

125	Infringement of moral rights actionable	125
-----	---	-----

Presumptions

126	Presumptions relevant to literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works	126
127	Presumptions relevant to certain artistic works	127
128	Presumptions relevant to computer programs, sound recordings, and films	128
129	Presumptions relevant to works subject to Crown copyright	129
130	Unjustified proceedings	129

Offences

131	Criminal liability for making or dealing with infringing objects	130
131A	Time for laying information	132
132	Order for delivery up in criminal proceedings	132
133	Liability of officers of body corporate	133
133A	Evidence in proceedings	134

Disposal of infringing copy or other object

134	Order as to disposal of infringing copy or other object	134
-----	---	-----

Part 7
Border protection measures

135	Definitions	135
136	Notice may be given to chief executive	136
137	Determination whether item is pirated copy	138
138	Limitations on requirement to supply information	138
139	Notice of determination	139
140	Detention of pirated copy	140

141	Proceedings	141
141A	Forfeiture of goods by consent	142
142	Powers of court	142
143	Inspection of item	143
144	Notice of parallel import may be given to chief executive <i>[Repealed]</i>	143
145	Delegation of powers, duties, and functions	143
146	Protection of persons acting under authority of Act	144
Part 8		
Copyright licensing		
147	Works of more than 1 author	145
	<i>References and applications with respect to licensing schemes</i>	
148	Licensing schemes to which sections 149 to 155 apply	145
	<i>References with respect to licensing schemes</i>	
149	Reference of proposed licensing scheme to Tribunal	146
150	Reference of licensing scheme to Tribunal	147
151	Further reference of scheme to Tribunal	147
152	Effect of order of Tribunal made on reference	148
	<i>Applications with respect to licensing schemes</i>	
153	Application for grant of licence in connection with licensing scheme	149
154	Application for review of order as to entitlement to licence	150
155	Effect of order of Tribunal made on application	151
	<i>References and applications with respect to licensing by licensing bodies</i>	
156	Licences to which sections 157 to 160 apply	151
157	Reference to Tribunal of proposed licence	152
158	Reference to Tribunal of expiring licence	152
159	Application for review of order as to licence	153
160	Effect of order of Tribunal as to licence	154
	<i>Factors to be taken into account in certain classes of cases</i>	
161	Unreasonable discrimination	155
162	Licences for reprographic copying	155
163	Licences for educational establishments in respect of works included in communication works	155
164	Licences to reflect conditions imposed by promoters of events	156

165	Licences to reflect payments in respect of underlying rights	156
166	Licences in respect of works included in retransmissions	157
	<i>Implied indemnity in schemes or licences for reprographic copying</i>	
167	Implied indemnity in certain schemes and licences for reprographic copying	158
168	Determination of equitable remuneration	159
	Part 9	
	Performers' rights	
169	Interpretation	160
170	Application	163
	<i>Performers' rights</i>	
171	Consent required for recording or live transmission of performance	164
172	Infringement by use of recording made without performer's consent	164
173	Copying of recordings	165
174	Infringement by importing, possessing, or dealing with illicit recording	165
	<i>Acts permitted in relation to performances</i>	
175	Incidental copying of performance or recording	166
175A	Transient reproduction of recording of performance	167
176	Permitted acts in relation to performances, criticism, reviews, and news reporting	167
177	Things done for purposes of instruction or examination	167
178	Playing or showing sound recording, film, or communication work at educational establishment	168
179	Recording of communication works by educational establishment	168
180	Subsequent dealings	169
181	Parliamentary and judicial proceedings	169
182	Royal commissions and statutory inquiries	169
183	Acts done under statutory authority	170
184	Use of recordings of spoken works in certain cases	170
185	Recordings of folk songs	171
186	Playing of sound recordings for purposes of club, society, etc	171
187	Incidental recording for purposes of communication work	172

188	Free public playing or showing of broadcast or cable programme	172
189	Reception and retransmission of broadcast in cable programme service [<i>Repealed</i>]	175
190	Provision of subtitled copies of communication work	175
191	Recording of communication work for archival purposes	175
192	Power of Tribunal to give consent on behalf of performer	175
	<i>Duration and transmission of rights</i>	
193	Duration of rights	177
194	Transmission of rights	177
	<i>Consent</i>	
195	Consent	177
	<i>Remedies for infringement</i>	
196	Proceedings for infringement of performers' rights	178
197	Order for delivery up in civil proceedings	178
	<i>Offences</i>	
198	Criminal liability for making, dealing with, using, or copying illicit recordings	179
199	Order for delivery up in criminal proceedings	181
200	False representation of authority to give consent	181
201	Liability of officers of body corporate	182
202	Order as to disposal of illicit recording	182
	<i>Application to foreign countries</i>	
203	Application of this Part to convention countries [<i>Repealed</i>]	183
204	Application of Part 9 to other entities	183
	Part 10	
	Copyright Tribunal	
	<i>Constitution</i>	
205	Copyright Tribunal	184
206	Membership of Tribunal	184
207	Term of office of members of Tribunal	185
208	Vacation of office	185
209	Deputies of members	186
210	Remuneration and travelling allowances	186
	<i>Jurisdiction and procedure</i>	
211	Jurisdiction of Tribunal	186
212	Parties to proceedings	187
213	Sittings of Tribunal	187

214	Procedure of Tribunal	188
215	Evidence in proceedings before Tribunal	188
216	Witness summons	189
217	Service of summons	189
218	Witnesses' allowances	190
219	Privileges and immunities	190
220	Non-attendance or refusal to co-operate	191
221	Contempt of Tribunal	191
222	Costs	192
223	Stating case for High Court	192
224	Appeal on question of law	193

Part 11

Miscellaneous provisions

225	Rights and privileges under other enactments or common law	193
-----	--	-----

Technological protection measures

226	Definitions of TPM terms	194
226A	Prohibited conduct in relation to technological protection measure	194
226B	Rights of issuer of TPM work	195
226C	Offence of contravening section 226A	195
226D	When rights of issuer of TPM work do not apply	196
226E	User's options if prevented from exercising permitted act by TPM	197

Copyright management information

226F	Meaning of copyright management information	198
226G	Interference with CMI prohibited	199
226H	Commercial dealing in work subject to CMI interference	199
226I	Contravention of section 226G or 226H	200
226J	Offence of dealing in work subject to CMI interference	200
227	Offence of fraudulently receiving programmes	200
228	Rights and remedies in respect of apparatus, etc, for unauthorised reception of transmissions	201

Other countries

229	Supplementary provisions as to fraudulent reception	202
230	Application to convention countries	202
231	Expenditure or liability incurred in connection with copyright work	204
232	Application of Act (other than Part 9) to other entities	204

233	Denial of copyright to persons connected with countries not giving adequate protection to New Zealand works	206
234	Regulations	207
	<i>Transitional provisions and savings</i>	
235	Transitional provisions and savings	209
236	Consequential amendments and repeals	209
	Schedule 1	210
	Transitional provisions and savings	
	Schedule 2	233
	Enactments amended	
	Schedule 3	234
	Enactments repealed	
	Schedule 4	235
	Regulations revoked	

An Act to consolidate and amend the law relating to copyright

1 Short Title and commencement

- (1) This Act may be cited as the Copyright Act 1994.
- (2) Except as provided in sections 27(2) and 144(5), this Act shall come into force on 1 January 1995.

2 Interpretation

- (1) In this Act, unless the context otherwise requires,—

adaptation,—

 - (a) in relation to a literary or dramatic work, includes—
 - (i) a translation of the work from one language to another:
 - (ii) a version of a dramatic work in which it is converted into a literary work or, as the case may be, of a literary work in which it is converted into a dramatic work:
 - (iii) a version of the work in which the story or action is conveyed wholly or mainly by means of pictures in a form suitable for reproduction in a

book, or in a newspaper, magazine, or similar periodical:

- (b) in relation to a literary work that is a computer program, includes a version of the program in which it is converted into or out of a computer language or code or into a different computer language or code, otherwise than incidentally in the course of running the program:
- (c) in relation to a musical work, means an arrangement or transcription of the work

Archives New Zealand has the same meaning as in section 4 of the Public Records Act 2005

article, in relation to an article in a periodical, includes an item of any description

artistic work—

- (a) means—
 - (i) a graphic work, photograph, sculpture, collage, or model, irrespective of artistic quality; or
 - (ii) a work of architecture, being a building or a model for a building; or
 - (iii) a work of artistic craftsmanship, not falling within subparagraph (i) or subparagraph (ii); but
- (b) does not include a layout design or an integrated circuit within the meaning of section 2 of the Layout Designs Act 1994

authorised, with respect to anything done in relation to a work, means done—

- (a) by or with the licence of the copyright owner; or
- (b) pursuant to section 62

building includes—

- (a) any fixed structure; and
- (b) a part of a building or fixed structure

business includes a trade or profession

CMI or **copyright management information** has the meaning given to it in section 226F

collective work means—

- (a) a work of joint authorship; or

- (b) a work in which there are distinct contributions by different authors or in which works, or parts of works, of different authors are incorporated

communicate means to transmit or make available by means of a communication technology, including by means of a telecommunications system or electronic retrieval system, and **communication** has a corresponding meaning

communication work means a transmission of sounds, visual images, or other information, or a combination of any of those, for reception by members of the public, and includes a broadcast or a cable programme

compilation includes—

- (a) a compilation consisting wholly of works or parts of works; and
(b) a compilation consisting partly of works or parts of works; and
(c) a compilation of data other than works or parts of works

computer-generated, in relation to a work, means that the work is generated by computer in circumstances such that there is no human author of the work

convention country, except in Part 9, means an entity that is a party to an international agreement or arrangement relating to copyright

copying—

- (a) means, in relation to any description of work, reproducing, recording, or storing the work in any material form (including any digital format), in any medium and by any means; and
(b) *[Repealed]*
(c) includes, in relation to an artistic work, the making of a copy in 3 dimensions of a two-dimensional work and the making of a copy in 2 dimensions of a three-dimensional work; and
(d) includes, in relation to a film or communication work, the making of a photograph of the whole or any substantial part of any image forming part of the film or communication work—

and **copy** and **copies** have corresponding meanings

copyright licence means a licence to do, or authorise the doing of, any restricted act

copyright work means a work of any of the descriptions in section 14(1) in which copyright exists

country includes every territory for whose international relations the Government of that country is responsible

Crown—

- (a) means Her Majesty the Queen in right of New Zealand; and
- (b) includes a Minister of the Crown, a government department, and an Office of Parliament; but
- (c) does not include—
 - (i) a Crown entity; or
 - (ii) a State enterprise named in Schedule 1 of the State-Owned Enterprises Act 1986

Crown entity has the same meaning as it has in section 2(1) of the Public Finance Act 1989

director, in relation to a copyright work that is a film, includes any person nominated by the director of the film to exercise the director's rights under Part 4 if—

- (a) the nomination is in writing and signed by the director; and
- (b) the nomination is made before the completion of the making of the film; and
- (c) the person nominated makes a creative contribution to the making of the film

dramatic work includes—

- (a) a work of dance or mime; and
- (b) a scenario or script for a film

educational establishment means—

- (a) any school to which the Education Act 1989 or the Private Schools Conditional Integration Act 1975 applies;
- (b) any—
 - (i) special school; or
 - (ii) special class; or
 - (iii) special clinic; or
 - (iv) special service—

established under section 98(1) of the Education Act 1964:

- (c) any special institution within the meaning of section 92(1) of the Education Act 1989:
- (d) any early childhood service within the meaning of section 309 of the Education Act 1989:
- (e) any—
 - (i) institution; or
 - (ii) private training establishment; or
 - (iii) government training establishment—
 within the meaning of section 159(1) of the Education Act 1989, that is not conducted for profit:
- (f) any body, or class of body, that is not conducted for profit and that is approved by the Minister of Education as an educational establishment for the purposes of this Act by a notice published in the *Gazette*

educational resource supplier means any person—

- (a) whose principal function is the copying of communication works and the supply of the copies it makes to educational establishments for educational purposes; and
- (b) who does not conduct its business for profit; and
- (c) who has been approved by the Minister of Education as an educational resource supplier for the purpose of this Act by a notice published in the *Gazette* and whose approval has not been revoked

electronic means actuated by electric, magnetic, electro-magnetic, electro-chemical, or electro-mechanical energy; and **in electronic form** means in a form usable only by electronic means

employed means employed under a contract of service or a contract of apprenticeship; and **employee**, **employer**, and **employment** have corresponding meanings

exclusive licence means a licence in writing, signed by or on behalf of a copyright owner, authorising the licensee, to the exclusion of all other persons (including the copyright owner), to exercise a right that would otherwise be exercisable exclusively by the copyright owner

facsimile copy includes a copy that is reduced or enlarged in scale

film means a recording on any medium from which a moving image may by any means be produced

future copyright means copyright that will or may come into existence in respect of a future work or a class of future work or on the occurrence of a future event

Government means the Executive Government of New Zealand

government department means any department or instrument of the Government, or any branch or division of any such department or instrument; but does not include—

- (a) a body corporate or other legal entity that has the power to contract;
- (b) an Office of Parliament;
- (c) Public Trust;
- (d) the Export Guarantee Office

graphic work includes—

- (a) any painting, drawing, diagram, map, chart, or plan; and
- (b) any engraving, etching, lithograph, woodcut, print, or similar work

infringing copy has the meaning given by section 12

instruction means—

- (a) giving a lesson, either in person or by correspondence, to a student or a group of students, at an educational establishment or elsewhere; or
- (b) receiving a lesson, either in person or by correspondence and either alone or in a group of students, at an educational establishment or elsewhere

international organisation means an organisation the members of which include 1 or more States

Internet service provider means a person who does either or both of the following things:

- (a) offers the transmission, routing, or providing of connections for digital online communications, between or among points specified by a user, of material of the user's choosing;
- (b) hosts material on websites or other electronic retrieval systems that can be accessed by a user

judicial proceedings includes—

- (a) proceedings before any court, tribunal, or person having authority to decide any matter affecting a person's legal rights or liabilities; and
- (b) proceedings before any other body that is prescribed by regulations made under this Act as a judicial body for the purposes of this Act

lawful user, in relation to a computer program, means a person who has a right to use the program, whether under a copyright licence or otherwise

licensing body means a body of persons (whether corporate or unincorporate) that, as copyright owner or prospective copyright owner or as agent for a copyright owner,—

- (a) negotiates copyright licences; and
- (b) grants copyright licences, including licences that cover the works of more than 1 author

licensing scheme means a scheme setting out—

- (a) the classes of cases in which the operator of the scheme, or the person on whose behalf the operator acts, is willing to grant copyright licences; and
- (b) the terms on which copyright licences would be granted in those classes of cases;—

and for the purpose of this definition a **scheme** includes anything in the nature of a scheme, whether described as a scheme or as a tariff or by any other name

literary work means any work, other than a dramatic or musical work, that is written, spoken, or sung; and includes—

- (a) a table or compilation; and
- (b) a computer program

material time,—

- (a) in relation to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work, means,—
 - (i) in the case of an unpublished work, when the work is made or, if the making of the work extends over a period, a substantial part of that period; and
 - (ii) in the case of a published work, when the work is first published or, if the author has died before

that time, immediately before his or her death;
and

- (b) in relation to a sound recording or film, means when the work is made or, if the making of the work extends over a period, a substantial part of that period; and
- (c) in relation to a communication work, means when the work is made or received in New Zealand; and
- (d) in relation to a typographical arrangement of a published edition, means when the edition is first published
- (e) *[Repealed]*

Minister means the Minister of the Crown who, under the authority of any warrant or with the authority of the Prime Minister, is for the time being responsible for the administration of this Act

Ministerial inquiry includes the proceedings of a committee set up by the Government or a Minister or Ministers to inquire into or advise on any matter

musical work means a work consisting of music, exclusive of any words intended to be sung or spoken with the music or any actions intended to be performed with the music

New Zealand includes Tokelau

Office of Parliament means—

- (a) the Parliamentary Commissioner for the Environment (and that Commissioner's office);
- (b) the Office of Ombudsmen;
- (c) the Auditor-General;
- (d) the Parliamentary Counsel Office

performance, except in Part 9,—

- (a) in the case of a literary work that is a lecture, address, speech, or sermon, includes delivery of that work; and
- (b) in general, includes any mode of visual or acoustic presentation of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work, including presentation of the work by means of a sound recording, film, or communication work

photograph means a recording of light or other radiation on any medium on which an image is produced or from which an image may by any means be produced; but does not include a film or part of a film

plate includes any stereotype, stone, block, mould, matrix, transfer, negative, or other similar appliance

prescribed foreign country means any country (other than New Zealand)—

- (a) to which section 230 applies; or
- (b) that is declared by Order in Council made under section 232 to be a foreign country to which any provision of this Act applies; and, with respect to the application of any provision of this Act to such a country, the provision shall be read subject to the terms of that Order in Council

proceedings includes a counterclaim; and references to the plaintiff and to the defendant in proceedings shall be construed accordingly

published edition means a published edition of the whole or any part of 1 or more literary, dramatic, or musical works

regulations—

- (a) has the same meaning as it has in section 2 of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989; and
- (b) includes any instruments that have, pursuant to section 6A of the Regulations Act 1936 or section 14 of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989, been printed or published as if they were regulations

rental means any arrangement under which a copy of a work is made available—

- (a) for payment (in money or money's worth); or
- (b) in the course of a business, as part of services or amenities for which payment is made,—
on terms that it will or may be returned

reprographic copy means a copy made by a reprographic process; and **reprographic copying** has a corresponding meaning

reprographic process means a process—

- (a) for making facsimile copies; or
- (b) involving the use of an appliance for making multiple copies;—

and includes, in relation to a work held in electronic form, any copying by electronic means; but does not include the making of a film or sound recording

restricted act means any of the acts described in section 16

sculpture includes a cast or model made for purposes of sculpture

sound recording means—

- (a) a recording of sounds, from which the sounds may be reproduced; or
- (b) a recording of the whole or any part of a literary, dramatic, or musical work, from which sounds reproducing the work or part may be produced,—

regardless of the medium on which the recording is made or the method by which the sounds are reproduced or produced

statutory inquiry means an inquiry held or investigation conducted in pursuance of a duty imposed or power conferred by or under an enactment

sufficient acknowledgement, in relation to a work, means an acknowledgement identifying—

- (a) the work by its title or other description; and
- (b) the author of the work, unless,—
 - (i) in the case of a published work, it is published anonymously;
 - (ii) in the case of an unpublished work, it is not possible by reasonable inquiry to ascertain the identity of the author

telecommunications system means a system for conveying visual images, sounds, or other information by electronic means

TPM or **technological protection measure** has the meaning given to it in section 226

TPM circumvention device has the meaning given to it in section 226

TPM work has the meaning given to it in section 226

transcript means a written record of words spoken on a recording

Tribunal means the Copyright Tribunal continued by section 205

unauthorised, with respect to anything done in relation to a work, means done otherwise than—

- (a) by or with the licence of the copyright owner; or
- (b) pursuant to section 62

wireless communication means the sending of electromagnetic energy over paths not provided by a material substance constructed or arranged for that purpose

working day means any day of the week other than—

- (a) Saturday, Sunday, Good Friday, Easter Monday, Anzac Day, Labour Day, the Sovereign's birthday, and Waitangi Day; and
- (b) a day in the period commencing with 25 December in any year and ending with 15 January in the following year

writing includes any form of notation or code, whether by hand or otherwise and regardless of the method by which, or medium in or on which, it is recorded; and **written** has a corresponding meaning.

- (2) References in this Act to the time at which a literary, dramatic, or musical work is made are to the time at which the work is recorded, in writing or otherwise.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 2(1), 3(6), 3(8), 17(1), 24(5), 26(9), 36(1); 1989 No 44 s 2; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 1(2), 3(1), 3(2), 4, 5(1), 6(1), 8(1), 16(1), 19(2), 21(3), 21(4), 92(1), 178 (UK)

Section 2(1) **Archives New Zealand**: inserted, on 21 April 2005, by section 67(1) of the Public Records Act 2005 (2005 No 40).

Section 2(1) **broadcast**: repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **CMI** or **copyright management information**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **communicate**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **communication work**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **convention country**: substituted, on 14 October 1999, by section 3(2) of the Copyright Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 124).

Section 2(1) **copying** paragraph (a): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **copying** paragraph (b): repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **copying** paragraph (d): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(4) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **educational establishment** paragraph (d): substituted, on 1 December 2008, by section 60(1) of the Education Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 19).

Section 2(1) **educational resource supplier**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **government department** paragraph (c): substituted, on 1 March 2002, by section 170(1) of the Public Trust Act 2001 (2001 No 100).

Section 2(1) **infringing copy**: inserted, on 19 May 1998, by section 3 of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

Section 2(1) **Internet service provider**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **material time** paragraph (c): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(5) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **material time** paragraph (d): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(5) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **material time** paragraph (e): repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(5) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **Minister**: substituted, on 1 October 1995, by section 10(3) of the Department of Justice (Restructuring) Act 1995 (1995 No 39).

Section 2(1) **National Archives**: repealed, on 21 April 2005, by section 67(1) of the Public Records Act 2005 (2005 No 40).

Section 2(1) **Office of Parliament** paragraph (c): substituted, on 1 July 2001, by section 53 of the Public Audit Act 2001 (2001 No 10).

Section 2(1) **performance** paragraph (b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(6) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **TPM** or **technological protection measure**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **TPM circumvention device**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 2(1) **TPM work**: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 4(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

3 Associated definitions for communication works

- (1) References in this Act to a person making a communication work are—
- (a) to the person transmitting the communication work or making it available by means of a communication technology, if that person has responsibility to any extent for its contents; and
 - (b) any person who provides the contents of the work and who makes with the person communicating the work the arrangements necessary for its communication.
- (2) For the purposes of this Act, in the case of communicating a work by satellite transmission,—
- (a) the place from which the work is communicated is the place from which the signals carrying the work are transmitted to the satellite; and
 - (b) the person communicating the work is the person who transmits those signals to the satellite.

Section 3: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 5 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

4 Meaning of cable programme service, and associated definitions

[Repealed]

Section 4: repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 6 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

5 Meaning of author

- (1) For the purposes of this Act, the **author** of a work is the person who creates it.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), the person who **creates** a work shall be taken to be,—
- (a) in the case of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work that is computer-generated, the person by whom the arrangements necessary for the creation of the work are undertaken;
 - (b) in the case of a sound recording or film, the person by whom the arrangements necessary for the making of the recording or film are undertaken:

- (c) in the case of a communication work, the person who makes the communication work:
 - (d) in the case of a typographical arrangement of a published edition, the publisher.
 - (e) *[Repealed]*
- (3) The author of a work of any of the descriptions referred to in subsection (2) may be a natural person or a body corporate.
- Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 9(1)–(3) (UK)
- Section 5(2)(c): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 7 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).
- Section 5(2)(d): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 7 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).
- Section 5(2)(e): repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 7 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

6 Meaning of work of joint authorship

- (1) In this Act, the term **work of joint authorship** means a work produced by the collaboration of 2 or more authors in which the contribution of each author is not distinct from that of the other author or authors.
- (2) A communication work must be treated as a work of joint authorship in any case where more than 1 person is to be taken as making the communication work.
- (3) References in this Act to the author of a work shall be construed in relation to a work of joint authorship as a reference to all the authors of the work.
- (4) Where, in relation to a work of joint authorship, copyright would not exist in the work if 1 or more of the authors were the sole author or sole joint authors, the work shall be treated as if the other author or authors were the sole author or sole joint authors of the work.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 12(3), (4), (6); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 10 (UK)

Section 6(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 8 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

7 Meaning of unknown authorship

- (1) For the purposes of this Act, a work is of **unknown authorship** if the identity of the author is unknown or, in the case of a

work of joint authorship, if the identity of none of the authors is known.

- (2) For the purposes of this Act, the identity of an author shall be regarded as unknown if it is not possible for a person who wishes to ascertain the identity of the author to do so by reasonable inquiry; but if that identity is once known it shall not subsequently be regarded as unknown.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 11(3), (4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 9(4), (5) (UK)

8 Meaning of copyright owner

- (1) Where copyright or any aspect of copyright is owned by more than 1 person jointly, references in this Act to the copyright owner, or to the owner of the copyright in the work, are to all owners.
- (2) Where different persons are entitled to different aspects of copyright in a work, the copyright owner for any purpose of this Act is the person who is entitled to the aspect of copyright relevant for that purpose.
- (3) Subject to the provisions of Part 7, where a question arises under this Act whether an object of any description has been imported, sold, or otherwise dealt with other than pursuant to a copyright licence, the copyright owner shall be taken to be the person entitled to the copyright in respect of its application to the making of objects of that description in the country into which the object was imported or in which it was sold or otherwise dealt with.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 3(10); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 173 (UK)

9 Meaning of issue to the public

- (1) References in this Act to the **issue of copies of a work to the public** mean the act of putting into circulation copies not previously put into circulation; and do not include the acts of—
- (a) subsequent distribution or sale of those copies; or
 - (b) subject to subsections (2) and (3), subsequent hiring or loan of those copies; or
 - (c) subsequent importation of those copies into New Zealand; or

- (d) distribution of imported copies that are not infringing copies within the meaning of section 12 subsequent to their importation into New Zealand.
- (2) The issue of copies of a work to the public, in relation to computer programs, includes the rental of copies of computer programs to the public and rental subsequent to those works having been put into circulation; but does not include any such rental where—
 - (a) the computer program is incorporated into any other thing; and
 - (b) the rental of the computer program is not the principal purpose or one of the principal purposes of the rental; and
 - (c) the computer program cannot readily be copied by the hirer.
- (3) The issue of copies of a work to the public, in relation to sound recordings and films, includes the rental of copies of those works to the public and rental subsequent to those works having been put into circulation.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 18(2) (UK)

Section 9(1)(c): amended, on 19 May 1998, by section 4 of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

Section 9(1)(d): added, on 19 May 1998, by section 4 of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

Section 9(2): amended, on 31 October 2003, by section 3(1) of the Copyright (Parallel Importation of Films and Onus of Proof) Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 111).

Section 9(3): amended, on 31 October 2003, by section 3(2) of the Copyright (Parallel Importation of Films and Onus of Proof) Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 111).

10 Meaning of publication

- (1) In this Act, the term **publication**, in relation to a work,—
 - (a) means the issue of copies of the work to the public; and
 - (b) includes, in the case of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work, making it available to the public by means of an electronic retrieval system;—and **publish** has a corresponding meaning.

- (2) In the case of a work of architecture in the form of a building, or an artistic work incorporated in a building, construction of the building shall be treated as equivalent to publication of the work.
- (3) References in this Act to publication do not include publication that is not intended to satisfy the reasonable requirements of the public.
- (4) The following acts do not constitute **publication** for the purposes of this Act:
- (a) in the case of a literary, dramatic, or musical work,—
 - (i) the performance of the work; or
 - (ii) the communication of the work to the public (otherwise than for the purposes of an electronic retrieval system):
 - (b) in the case of any artistic work,—
 - (i) the exhibition of the work; or
 - (ii) the issue to the public of copies of a film including the work; or
 - (iii) the communication of the work to the public (otherwise than for the purposes of an electronic retrieval system):
 - (c) in the case of an artistic work being—
 - (i) a sculpture; or
 - (ii) a work of architecture in the form of a building or a model for a building; or
 - (iii) a work of artistic craftsmanship,—
the issue to the public of copies of a graphic work representing, or of photographs of, the work:
 - (d) in the case of a sound recording or film,—
 - (i) the playing or showing of the work in public; or
 - (ii) the communication of the work to the public.
- (5) No account shall be taken for the purposes of this section of any unauthorised act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 3(1), (2), (5), (6); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 175(1), (3)–(6) (UK)

Section 10(4)(a)(ii): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 9(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 10(4)(b)(iii): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 9(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 10(4)(d)(ii): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 9(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

11 Meaning of commercial publication

In this Act, the term **commercial publication**, in relation to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work, means the publication of the work consisting of—

- (a) issuing copies of the work to the public at a time when copies made in advance of the receipt of orders are generally available to the public; or
- (b) making the work available to the public by means of an electronic retrieval system;—

and related expressions shall be construed accordingly.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 175(2) (UK)

12 Meaning of infringing copy

- (1) In this Act, the term **infringing copy**, in relation to a copyright work, shall be construed in accordance with this section.
- (2) An object is an infringing copy if its making constitutes an infringement of the copyright in the work in question.
- (3) An object that a person imports, or proposes to import, into New Zealand is an infringing copy if—
 - (a) the making of the object constituted an infringement of the copyright in the work in question in the country in which the object was made; or
 - (b) the importer would have infringed the copyright in the work in question in New Zealand had the importer made the object in New Zealand, unless the object is one to which subsection (5A) or subsection (6) applies.
- (4) Where in any proceedings the question arises whether an object is an infringing copy, and it is shown—
 - (a) that the object is a copy of the work in question; and
 - (b) that copyright exists in the work or has existed at any time,—it shall be presumed until the contrary is proved that the object was made at a time when copyright existed in the work.
- (5) In this Act, an infringing copy includes a copy falling to be treated as an infringing copy under any of the following provisions of this Act:

- (a) section 85(4) (which relates to incidental recording for the purposes of a communication work):
 - (b) section 93(1) (which relates to subsequent dealings with copies made under Part 3).
- (5A) An object that a person imports or proposes to import into New Zealand is not an infringing copy under subsection (3)(b) if—
- (a) it was made by or with the consent of the owner of the copyright, or other equivalent intellectual property right, in the work in question in the country in which the object was made; or
 - (b) where no person owned the copyright, or other equivalent intellectual property right, in the work in question in the country in which the object was made, any of the following applies:
 - (i) the copyright protection (or other equivalent intellectual property right protection) formerly afforded to the work in question in that country has expired:
 - (ii) the person otherwise entitled to be the owner of the copyright (or other equivalent intellectual property right) in the work in question in that country has failed to take some step legally available to them to secure the copyright (or other equivalent intellectual property right) in the work in that country:
 - (iii) the object is a copy in 3 dimensions of an artistic work that has been industrially applied in that country in the manner specified in section 75(4):
 - (iv) the object was made in that country by or with the consent of the owner of the copyright in the work in New Zealand.
- (6) In this Act, an infringing copy does not include a literary work or an artistic work that—
- (a) relates to a medicine that has been imported by the Crown pursuant to section 32A of the Medicines Act 1981; and
 - (b) has been made, copied, published, adapted, or distributed, in an overseas country, by or with the licence

of the owner of the copyright in the work in that country.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 10(5); 1990 No 71 s 2; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 27 (UK)

Section 12(3): substituted, on 19 May 1998, by section 5(1) of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

Section 12(5)(a): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 10 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 12(5A): inserted, on 19 May 1998, by section 5(2) of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

13 Act to bind the Crown

This Act binds the Crown.

Part 1

Description, ownership, and duration of copyright

Description of copyright

14 Copyright in original works

- (1) Copyright is a property right that exists, in accordance with this Act, in original works of the following descriptions:
 - (a) literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works:
 - (b) sound recordings:
 - (c) films:
 - (d) communication works:
 - (e) typographical arrangements of published editions.
- (2) A work is not original if—
 - (a) it is, or to the extent that it is, a copy of another work; or
 - (b) it infringes the copyright in, or to the extent that it infringes the copyright in, another work.
- (3) *[Repealed]*

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 7(1), 13(1), 14(1), 15(1), 17(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 1(1), 5(2), 6(6), 7(6), 8(2) (UK)

Section 14(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 11(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 14(3): repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 11(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

15 Recording necessary for some works

- (1) Copyright does not exist in a literary or dramatic or musical work unless and until the work is recorded, in writing or otherwise.
- (2) It is immaterial for the purposes of subsection (1) whether the work is recorded by or with the consent of the author.
- (3) Where a work is not recorded by the author, the question whether copyright exists in the record, as distinct from the work recorded, is not affected by anything in subsection (1).

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 3(2), (3) (UK)

16 Acts restricted by copyright

- (1) The owner of the copyright in a work has the exclusive right to do, in accordance with sections 30 to 34, the following acts in New Zealand:
 - (a) to copy the work:
 - (b) to issue copies of the work to the public, whether by sale or otherwise:
 - (c) to perform the work in public:
 - (d) to play the work in public:
 - (e) to show the work in public:
 - (f) to communicate the work to the public:
 - (g) to make an adaptation of the work:
 - (h) to do any of the acts referred to in any of paragraphs (a) to (f) in relation to an adaptation of the work:
 - (i) to authorise another person to do any of the acts referred to in any of paragraphs (a) to (h).

- (2) Subsection (1) applies subject to Parts 3 and 8.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 6(1), 7(3), 7(4), 13(5), 14(5), 17(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 16(1), (4) (UK)

Section 16(1)(f): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 12 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

*Qualification for copyright***17 Qualification for copyright**

- (1) Copyright does not exist in a work unless the requirements of section 18 or section 19 or section 20 are satisfied in respect of that work.

- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to copyright that exists by virtue of section 26 or section 28.
- (3) If the requirements of section 18 or section 19 or section 20 or section 26 or section 28 are once satisfied in respect of a work, copyright in that work does not cease to exist if any change occurs in any of the circumstances by reason of which those requirements were satisfied.
- (4) For the avoidance of doubt, it is hereby declared that where any other provision of this Act imposes requirements, in addition to the requirements of section 18 or section 19 or section 20, that must be satisfied for copyright to exist in a work, copyright does not exist in a work unless the requirements of that provision and the requirements of section 18 or section 19 or section 20 are satisfied in respect of that work.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 153 (UK)

18 Qualification by reference to author

- (1) A work qualifies for copyright if the author is, at the material time,—
 - (a) a New Zealand citizen; or
 - (b) an individual domiciled or resident in New Zealand; or
 - (c) a body incorporated under the law of New Zealand.
- (2) A work qualifies for copyright if the author is, at the material time,—
 - (a) a citizen or subject of a prescribed foreign country; or
 - (b) an individual domiciled or resident in a prescribed foreign country; or
 - (c) a body incorporated under the law of a prescribed foreign country.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), a work of joint authorship qualifies for copyright if, at the material time, any of the authors satisfies the requirements of subsection (1) or subsection (2).
- (4) Where a work of joint authorship qualifies for copyright under this section alone, only those authors who satisfy the requirements of subsection (1) or subsection (2) shall be taken into account for the purposes of the application, to that work, of the following provisions of this Act:

- (a) section 21 (which relates to the first ownership of copyright):
- (b) subsections (1) and (4) of section 22 (which relate to the duration of copyright in literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works):
- (c) section 67 (which relates to acts permitted on assumptions as to expiry of copyright or death of the author in relation to anonymous or pseudonymous works).

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 7(1), 12(1), 13(1), 14(1), 15(1), 17(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 154 (UK)

19 Qualification by reference to country of first publication

- (1) A work (being a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work, a sound recording, a film, or a typographical arrangement of a published edition) qualifies for copyright if it is first published—
 - (a) in New Zealand; or
 - (b) in a prescribed foreign country.
- (2) For the purposes of this section, publication in one country shall not be regarded as other than the first publication by reason of simultaneous publication elsewhere; and for this purpose publication elsewhere within the previous 30 days shall be treated as simultaneous.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 7(2), 13(2), 14(2), 17(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 155 (UK)

20 Qualification by reference to origin of communication work

A communication work qualifies for copyright if it is made from—

- (a) a place in New Zealand; or
- (b) a place in a prescribed foreign country.

Section 20: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 13 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Ownership of copyright

21 First ownership of copyright

- (1) Subject to the provisions of this section, the person who is the author of a work is the first owner of any copyright in the work.

- (2) Where an employee makes, in the course of his or her employment, a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work, that person's employer is the first owner of any copyright in the work.
- (3) Where—
 - (a) a person commissions, and pays or agrees to pay for, the taking of a photograph or the making of a computer program, painting, drawing, diagram, map, chart, plan, engraving, model, sculpture, film, or sound recording; and
 - (b) the work is made in pursuance of that commission,— that person is the first owner of any copyright in the work.
- (4) Subsections (2) and (3) apply subject to any agreement to the contrary.
- (5) Subsections (1) to (4) apply subject to sections 26 and 28.
Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 9, 13(4), 14(4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 11 (UK)

Duration of copyright

22 Duration of copyright in literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works

- (1) Subject to the following provisions of this section, copyright in a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work expires at the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the author dies.
- (2) If the work is computer-generated, copyright expires at the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the work is made.
- (3) If the work is of unknown authorship, copyright expires at the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which it is first made available to the public by an authorised act.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), the circumstances in which a work may be made available to the public include,—
 - (a) in the case of a literary, dramatic, or musical work,—
 - (i) performance in public:
 - (ii) communication to the public:
 - (b) in the case of an artistic work,—

- (i) exhibition in public;
 - (ii) the playing or showing in public of a film that includes the work;
 - (iii) communication to the public.
- (5) If—
- (a) a work is of unknown authorship; and
 - (b) copyright in the work has expired pursuant to subsection (3); and
 - (c) the identity of the author becomes known after the copyright has expired,—
- subsection (1) does not apply to revive copyright in the work.
- (6) In relation to a work of joint authorship,—
- (a) the reference in subsection (1) to the death of the author shall be construed,—
 - (i) if the identity of all the authors is known, as a reference to the last of them to die;
 - (ii) if the identity of 1 or more, but not all, of the authors is known, as a reference to the death of the last of the authors whose identity is known; and
 - (b) the reference in subsection (5) to the identity of the author becoming known shall be construed as a reference to the identity of any of the authors becoming known.
- (7) This section does not apply to copyright in a work to which section 26 or section 28 applies.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 8(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 12 (UK)

Section 22(4): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 14 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

23 Duration of copyright in sound recordings and films

- (1) Copyright in a sound recording or film expires—
- (a) at the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the work is made; or
 - (b) if it is made available to the public by an authorised act before the end of that period, 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which it is so made available,—
- whichever is the later.

- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a sound recording or film is made available to the public when—
- (a) the work is first—
 - (i) published; or
 - (ii) communicated to the public; or
 - (b) in the case of a film or film soundtrack,—
 - (i) the work is first shown in public; or
 - (ii) the work is first played in public.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 13(3), 14(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 13 (UK)

Section 23(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 15 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

24 Duration of copyright in communication works

- (1) Copyright in a communication work expires at the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the communication work is first communicated to the public.
- (2) Copyright in a repeated communication work expires at the same time as copyright in the initial communication work expires.
- (3) There is no copyright in a repeated communication work that is communicated to the public after copyright in the initial communication work has expired.

Section 24: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 16 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

25 Duration of copyright in typographical arrangement of published editions

Copyright in a typographical arrangement of a published edition expires at the end of the period of 25 years from the end of the calendar year in which the edition is first published.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 17(2); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 15 (UK)

Crown copyright

26 Crown copyright

- (1) Where a work is made by a person employed or engaged by the Crown under a contract of service, a contract of apprenticeship, or a contract for services,—

- (a) the work qualifies for copyright notwithstanding section 17(1); and
 - (b) the Crown is the first owner of any copyright in the work.
- (2) Copyright in such a work is referred to in this Act as **Crown copyright**, notwithstanding that such copyright is assigned to another person.
- (3) Crown copyright shall expire,—
- (a) in the case of a typographical arrangement of a published edition, at the end of the period of 25 years from the end of the calendar year in which the work is made;
 - (b) in the case of any other work, at the end of the period of 100 years from the end of the calendar year in which the work is made.
- (4) In the case of a work of joint authorship where 1 or more, but not all, of the authors are persons employed or engaged by the Crown under a contract of service, a contract of apprenticeship, or a contract for services, this section applies only in relation to those authors and the copyright existing by virtue of their contribution to the work.
- (5) Subject to this section and to any other express provision of this Act, the provisions of this Act apply in relation to Crown copyright as to other copyright.
- (6) Subsection (1) applies subject to any agreement to the contrary.
- (7) This section is subject to section 27.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 52; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 163 (UK)

27 No copyright in certain works

- (1) No copyright exists in any of the following works, whenever those works were made:
- (a) any Bill introduced into the House of Representatives;
 - (b) any Act as defined in section 29 of the Interpretation Act 1999;
 - (c) any regulations;
 - (d) any bylaw as defined in section 2 of the Bylaws Act 1910;
 - (e) the New Zealand Parliamentary Debates:

- (f) reports of select committees laid before the House of Representatives:
 - (g) judgments of any court or tribunal:
 - (h) reports of Royal commissions, commissions of inquiry, ministerial inquiries, or statutory inquiries.
- (1A) No Crown copyright exists in any work, whenever that work was made,—
- (a) in which the Crown copyright has not been assigned to another person; and
 - (b) that is incorporated by reference in a work referred to in subsection (1).
- (1B) Except as specified in subsection (1A), nothing in subsection (1) affects copyright in any work that is incorporated by reference in a work referred to in subsection (1).
- (2) Subsection (1) shall come into force on a date to be appointed by the Governor-General by Order in Council; and 1 or more Orders in Council may be made appointing different dates for different paragraphs of that subsection.

Section 27(1): brought into force, on 1 April 2001, by the Copyright Act Commencement Order 2000 (SR 2000/245).

Section 27(1): amended, on 1 November 1999, pursuant to section 38 of the Interpretation Act 1999 (1999 No 85).

Section 27(1A): inserted, on 14 April 2005, by section 3 of the Copyright Amendment Act 2005 (2005 No 33).

Section 27(1B): inserted, on 14 April 2005, by section 3 of the Copyright Amendment Act 2005 (2005 No 33).

28 Copyright vesting in certain international organisations

- (1) Where an original work (being a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or a film) is made by an officer or employee of, or is published by, an international organisation to which this section applies,—
- (a) the work qualifies for copyright notwithstanding section 17(1); and
 - (b) the organisation is the first owner of any copyright in the work.
- (2) The copyright of an international organisation under this section shall expire,—

- (a) in the case of a typographical arrangement of a published edition, at the end of the period of 25 years from the end of the calendar year in which the work is made or such longer period as may be specified for the purposes of this paragraph pursuant to subsection (5):
 - (b) in the case of any other work, at the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the work is made or such longer period as may be specified for the purposes of this paragraph pursuant to subsection (5).
- (3) Subject to this section and to any other express provision of this Act, the provisions of this Act apply in relation to the copyright of an international organisation under this section.
- (4) An international organisation to which this section applies shall be deemed to have, and to have had at all material times, the legal capacities of a body corporate for the purposes of holding, dealing with, and enforcing copyright and in connection with all legal proceedings relating to copyright.
- (5) The Governor-General may from time to time, by Order in Council,—
- (a) declare that any international organisation is an international organisation to which this section applies:
 - (b) for the purposes of complying with any international obligation of New Zealand, specify a period for the purposes of paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of subsection (2).

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 50; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 168 (UK)

Part 2

Infringement of copyright

Primary infringement of copyright

29 Infringement of copyright

- (1) Copyright in a work is infringed by a person who, other than pursuant to a copyright licence, does any restricted act.
- (2) References in this Act to the doing of a restricted act are to the doing of that act—

- (a) in relation to the work as a whole or any substantial part of it; and
 - (b) either directly or indirectly;—
and it is immaterial whether any intervening acts themselves infringe copyright.
- (3) This Part is subject to Parts 3 and 8.
Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 3(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 16(2), (3), (4) (UK)

30 Infringement by copying

The copying of a work is a restricted act in relation to every description of copyright work.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 17(1) (UK)

31 Infringement by issue of copies to public

The issue of copies of a work to the public is a restricted act in relation to every description of copyright work.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 18(1) (UK)

32 Infringement by performance or playing or showing in public

- (1) The performance of a work in public is a restricted act only in relation to a literary, dramatic, or musical work.
- (2) The playing or showing of a work in public is a restricted act only in relation to a sound recording, film, or communication work.
- (3) Where copyright in a work is infringed by the performance, playing, or showing of the work in public by means of apparatus for receiving visual images or sounds conveyed by electronic or other means,—
 - (a) the person by whom the visual images or sounds are sent; and
 - (b) in the case of a performance, the performers—
shall not be regarded as responsible for the infringement.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), a person who sends visual images or sounds does not include a person who retransmits visual images or sounds.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Acts 1988 s 19(1), (3), (4) (UK)

Section 32(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 17 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

33 Infringement by communicating to public

Communicating a work to the public is a restricted act in relation to every description of copyright work.

Section 33: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 18 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

34 Infringement by making adaptation or act done in relation to adaptation

- (1) The making of an adaptation of a work is a restricted act only in relation to a literary, dramatic, or musical work.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), an adaptation is made when it is recorded, in writing or otherwise.
- (3) The doing of any of the acts specified in any of sections 30 to 33 or in subsection (1), in relation to an adaptation of a work, is also a restricted act in relation to the literary, dramatic, or musical work from which the adaptation was made.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), where the act done in relation to an adaptation of a work is an act specified in section 32 or section 33, it is immaterial whether the adaptation has been recorded, in writing or otherwise, at the time the act is done.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 21(1), (2) (UK)

Secondary infringement of copyright

35 Infringement by importation

- (1) A person infringes copyright in a work if—
 - (a) that person imports into New Zealand an object that is an infringing copy of the work and,—
 - (i) in the case of a work that is a sound recording, film, or computer program to which subsection (6) applies, that person knows or ought reasonably to know that the object is an infringing copy; or
 - (ii) in the case of other works, that person knows or has reason to believe that the object is an infringing copy; and

- (b) the object was imported into New Zealand without a copyright licence; and
 - (c) the object was imported into New Zealand other than for that person's private and domestic use.
- (2) In civil proceedings for infringement of copyright under subsection (1), in the case of a work that is a sound recording, film, or computer program to which subsection (6) applies,—
 - (a) an object is presumed to be an infringing copy in the absence of evidence to the contrary; and
 - (b) the court must not require any person to disclose any information concerning the sources of supply of the object if it appears to the court that it is unreasonable to do so.
- (3) A person also infringes copyright in a film to which subsection (6) applies if that person—
 - (a) imports a copy of the film into New Zealand within 9 months of first being made available to the public; and
 - (b) knows or has reason to believe that the film is imported into New Zealand within 9 months of first being made available to the public; and
 - (c) is not the licensee of the copyright in New Zealand; and
 - (d) imports the film into New Zealand other than for that person's private and domestic use.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (3), a film is first made available to the public (as set out in section 23(2)) by any authorised act whether in New Zealand or elsewhere.
- (5) Subsections (3) and (4) are repealed on 31 October 2013.
- (6) This subsection applies to the following sound recordings, films, and computer programs:
 - (a) a sound recording stored in a material form that is separate from any device or apparatus capable of playing sound recordings:
 - (b) a film produced principally for cinematic release, or a copy of that film, or a copy of a substantial part of that film:
 - (c) a computer program stored in a material form that is separate from any device or apparatus capable of executing computer programs.

Section 35: substituted, on 31 October 2003, by section 4 of the Copyright (Parallel Importation of Films and Onus of Proof) Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 111).

Section 35(1)(c): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 19(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 35(3): substituted, on 12 April 2008, by section 19(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 35(4): substituted, on 12 April 2008, by section 19(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 35(5): substituted, on 12 April 2008, by section 19(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

36 Possessing or dealing with infringing copy

Copyright in a work is infringed by a person who, in New Zealand, other than pursuant to a copyright licence,—

- (a) possesses in the course of a business; or
- (b) in the course of a business or otherwise, sells or lets for hire; or
- (c) in the course of a business, offers or exposes for sale or hire; or
- (d) in the course of a business, exhibits in public or distributes; or
- (e) distributes otherwise than in the course of a business to such an extent as to affect prejudicially the copyright owner—

an object that is, and that the person knows or has reason to believe is, an infringing copy of the work.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 10(3), (4), 18(3), (4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 23 (UK)

37 Providing means for making infringing copies

(1) Copyright in a work is infringed by a person who, other than pursuant to a copyright licence,—

- (a) makes; or
- (b) imports into New Zealand; or
- (c) possesses in the course of a business; or
- (d) in the course of a business or otherwise, sells or lets for hire; or
- (e) in the course of a business, offers or exposes for sale or hire—

an object specifically designed or adapted for making copies of that work, knowing or having reason to believe that the object is to be used to make such infringing copies.

- (2) Copyright in a work is infringed by a person who, other than under a copyright licence, communicates a work to 1 or more persons, knowing or having reason to believe that infringing copies will be made by means of the reception of the communication in New Zealand or elsewhere.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 24 (UK)

Section 37(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 20 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

38 Permitting use of premises for infringing performance

- (1) Where copyright in a literary, dramatic, or musical work is infringed by a performance at a place of public entertainment, any person who gave permission for that place to be used for the performance is also liable for the infringement unless, when the person gave that permission, he or she believed on reasonable grounds that the performance would not infringe copyright.

- (2) In this section, the term **place of public entertainment** includes premises that are occupied mainly for purposes other than public entertainment but are from time to time made available for hire for the purposes of public entertainment.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 25 (UK)

39 Provision of apparatus for infringing performance, etc

- (1) Where copyright in a work is infringed by a performance of the work in public, or by the playing or showing of the work in public, by means of apparatus for—

- (a) playing sound recordings; or
- (b) showing films; or
- (c) receiving visual images or sounds conveyed by electronic means,—

the persons described in subsections (2) to (4) are also liable for the infringement.

- (2) A person who supplied the apparatus, or any substantial part of it, is liable for the infringement if, when he or she supplied the apparatus or part,—

- (a) he or she knew, or had reason to believe, that the apparatus was likely to be so used as to infringe copyright; or
 - (b) in the case of apparatus whose normal use involves a performance, playing, or showing in public, he or she had no reasonable grounds for believing that the apparatus would not be so used as to infringe copyright.
- (3) An occupier of premises who gave permission for the apparatus to be brought onto the premises is liable for the infringement if, when the occupier gave that permission, he or she knew, or had reason to believe, that the apparatus was likely to be so used as to infringe copyright.
- (4) A person who supplied a copy of a sound recording or film used to infringe copyright is liable for the infringement if, when the person supplied the copy, he or she knew, or had reason to believe, that the copy he or she supplied, or a copy made directly or indirectly from the copy, was likely to be so used as to infringe copyright.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 26 (UK)

Part 3

Acts permitted in relation to copyright works

40 Provisions to be construed independently

The provisions of this Part are to be construed independently of one another so that the fact that an act is not permitted by one provision does not mean that it is not permitted by another provision.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 28(4) (UK)

41 Incidental copying of copyright work

- (1) Copyright in a work is not infringed by—
- (a) the incidental copying of the work in an artistic work, a sound recording, a film, or a communication work; or
 - (b) the issue to the public of copies of an artistic work, the playing of a sound recording, the showing of a film, or the communication of a work to the public, in which a copyright work has been incidentally copied; or

- (c) the issue to the public of copies of a sound recording, film, or communication work to which paragraph (a) or (b) applies.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a musical work, words spoken or sung with music, or so much of a sound recording or communication work as includes a musical work or those words, must not be regarded as incidentally copied in another work if the musical work or the words, sound recording, or communication work is deliberately copied.

Section 41: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 21 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

42 Criticism, review, and news reporting

- (1) Fair dealing with a work for the purposes of criticism or review, of that or another work or of a performance of a work, does not infringe copyright in the work if such fair dealing is accompanied by a sufficient acknowledgement.
- (2) Fair dealing with a work for the purpose of reporting current events by means of a sound recording, film, or communication work does not infringe copyright in the work.
- (3) Fair dealing with a work (other than a photograph) for the purposes of reporting current events by any means other than those referred to in subsection (2) does not infringe copyright in the work if such fair dealing is accompanied by a sufficient acknowledgement.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 19(2), (3), 20(2), (3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 30 (UK)

Section 42(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 22 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

43 Research or private study

- (1) Fair dealing with a work for the purposes of research or private study does not infringe copyright in the work.
- (2) For the avoidance of doubt, it is hereby declared that fair dealing with a published edition for the purposes of research or private study does not infringe copyright in either the typographical arrangement of the edition or any literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or part of a work in the edition.

- (3) In determining, for the purposes of subsection (1), whether copying, by means of a reprographic process or by any other means, constitutes fair dealing for the purposes of research or private study, a court shall have regard to—
- (a) the purpose of the copying; and
 - (b) the nature of the work copied; and
 - (c) whether the work could have been obtained within a reasonable time at an ordinary commercial price; and
 - (d) the effect of the copying on the potential market for, or value of, the work; and
 - (e) where part of a work is copied, the amount and substantiality of the part copied taken in relation to the whole work.
- (4) This section does not authorise the making of more than 1 copy of the same work, or the same part of a work, on any one occasion, but in this subsection **copy** does not include a non-infringing transient reproduction to which section 43A applies.
- Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 19(1), (5), 20(1); Copyright Act 1968 s 40(1), (2) (Aust); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 29(1), (2) (UK)
- Section 43(4): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 23 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

43A Transient reproduction of work

A reproduction of a work does not infringe copyright in the work if the reproduction—

- (a) is transient or incidental; and
- (b) is an integral and essential part of a technological process for—
 - (i) making or receiving a communication that does not infringe copyright; or
 - (ii) enabling the lawful use of, or lawful dealing in, the work; and
- (c) has no independent economic significance.

Section 43A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 24 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Education

- 44 Copying for educational purposes of literary, dramatic, musical or artistic works or typographical arrangements**
- (1) Copyright in a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of a published edition is not infringed by the copying of the whole or part of the work or edition if—
- (a) the copying is done by means of a reprographic process or by any other means; and
 - (b) the copying is done—
 - (i) in the course of preparation for instruction; or
 - (ii) for use in the course of instruction; or
 - (iii) in the course of instruction; and
 - (c) the copying is done by or on behalf of the person who is to give, or who is giving, a lesson at an educational establishment; and
 - (d) no more than 1 copy of the whole or part of the work or edition is made on any one occasion.
- (2) Copyright in a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of a published edition is not infringed by the copying of the whole or part of the work or edition if—
- (a) the copying is not done by means of a reprographic process; and
 - (b) the copying is done—
 - (i) in the course of preparation for instruction; or
 - (ii) for use in the course of instruction; or
 - (iii) in the course of instruction; or
 - (iv) after the course of instruction; and
 - (c) the copying is done by a person who is to give, is giving, or has given the lesson or by a person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received the lesson; and
 - (d) 1 or more copies of the whole or part of the work or edition is or are made on any one occasion.
- (3) Copyright in a literary, dramatic, or musical work or the typographical arrangement of a published edition is not infringed by the copying of part of the work or edition if—
- (a) the copying is done by means of a reprographic process or by any other means; and

- (b) the copying is done for an educational purpose; and
 - (c) the copying is done by or on behalf of an educational establishment; and
 - (d) 1 or more copies of part of the work or edition is or are made on any one occasion; and
 - (e) no charge is made for the supply of a copy to any student or other person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received a lesson; and
 - (f) subject to subsection (4), either,—
 - (i) in the period beginning with the commencement of this Act and ending with the close of 31 December 1997, the copying is of no more than the greater of 5% of the work or edition or 5 pages of the work or edition; or
 - (ii) on and after 1 January 1998, the copying is of no more than the greater of 3% of the work or edition or 3 pages of the work or edition.
- (4) If the effect of subparagraph (i) or subparagraph (ii) of subsection (3)(f) would be that the whole of a work or edition is copied, those subparagraphs shall not apply and the copying that is permitted under subsection (3) shall be of no more than 50% of the whole work or edition.
- (4A) A copy of a work made in accordance with subsections (3) and (4) may be communicated to a person who is a student or other person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received, a lesson that relates to the work.
- (5) Copyright in an artistic work is not infringed by the copying, by means of a reprographic process or by any other means, of the whole or a part of that work if the artistic work is included within the part of any work or edition copied under subsection (3).
- (6) Where any part of a work or edition is copied under subsection (3) by or on behalf of an educational establishment,—
 - (a) that part of that work or edition may not, within 14 days of that copying, be copied again under that subsection by or on behalf of that educational establishment; and
 - (b) no other part of that work or edition may, within 14 days of that copying, be copied under that subsection by or on behalf of that educational establishment.

- (7) In subsections (3) to (6),—
- published edition or edition**, in relation to a collective work, means that part of the edition containing each work or part of a work
- work**, in relation to a collective work, means each of the works or parts of works in the collective work.
- Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 32(1), 36(1) (UK)
- Section 44(4A): inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 25 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

44A Storing copies for educational purposes

- (1) An educational establishment does not infringe copyright in a work that is made available on a website or other electronic retrieval system by storing a copy of the page or pages in which the work appears if—
- (a) the material is stored for an educational purpose; and
 - (b) the material—
 - (i) is displayed under a separate frame or identifier; and
 - (ii) identifies the author (if known) and source of the work; and
 - (iii) states the name of the educational establishment and the date on which the work was stored; and
 - (c) the material is restricted to use by authenticated users.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply, and the educational establishment does infringe copyright in the work, if the educational establishment knowingly fails to delete the stored material within a reasonable time after the material becomes no longer relevant to the course of instruction for which it was stored.
- (3) In subsection (1), **authenticated user** means a person who—
- (a) is a participant in the course of instruction for which the material is stored; and
 - (b) can access the stored material only through a verification process that verifies that he or she is entitled to access the stored material.

Section 44A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 26 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

45 Copying for educational purposes of films and sound recordings

- (1) Copyright in any work that is a film, sound recording, or communication work, or any work included in a film, sound recording, or communication work, is not infringed by the copying of that work in the circumstances set out in subsection (2).
- (2) The circumstances referred to in subsection (1) are—
 - (a) that the copying consists of or includes the making of a film or film soundtrack—
 - (i) in the course of preparation for instruction; or
 - (ii) for use in the course of instruction; or
 - (iii) in the course of instruction; or
 - (iv) after the course of instruction,—
where the lesson is on how to make films or film soundtracks; and
 - (b) that the copying is done by or on behalf of a person who is to give, is giving, or has given the lesson or by or on behalf of a person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received the lesson; and
 - (c) that no charge is made for the supply of a copy to any student or other person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received the lesson.
- (3) Copyright in—
 - (a) any work that is a sound recording; or
 - (b) any work included in a sound recording—is not infringed by the copying of that work in the circumstances set out in subsection (4).
- (4) The circumstances referred to in subsection (3) are—
 - (a) that the copying is done—
 - (i) in the course of preparation for instruction; or
 - (ii) for use in the course of instruction; or
 - (iii) in the course of instruction; or
 - (iv) after the course of instruction,—
where the lesson—
 - (v) relates to the learning of a language; or
 - (vi) is conducted by correspondence; and
 - (b) that the copying is done by or on behalf of a person who is to give, is giving, or has given the lesson or by or on

- behalf of a person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received the lesson; and
- (c) that no charge is made for the supply of a copy to any student or other person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received the lesson.
- (5) Subsections (3) and (4) do not apply if or to the extent that licences authorising the copying of a work in the circumstances set out in subsection (4) are available under a licensing scheme and the person doing the copying knew that fact.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 32(2) (UK)

Section 45(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 27 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

46 Anthologies for educational use

- (1) The copying of a short passage from a published work (being a literary, dramatic, or musical work) in a collection that—
- (a) is intended for use in educational establishments and is so described in its title, and in any advertisements issued by or on behalf of the publisher of that collection; and
- (b) consists mainly of material in which no copyright exists or in which copyright is owned by the publisher of that collection or the Crown—
- does not infringe copyright in the work if—
- (c) the publisher of the work did not intend it to be used in such establishments; and
- (d) the passage is accompanied by a sufficient acknowledgement.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not authorise the copying of more than 2 passages from copyright works by the same author in collections published by the same publisher over any period of 5 years.
- (3) In relation to any given passage, the reference in subsection (2) to passages from copyright works by the same author—
- (a) shall be taken to include passages from collective works of which that author is one of the authors; and
- (b) if the passage in question is from such a collective work, shall be taken to include passages from works by any of the authors, whether alone or in collaboration with another.

- (4) References in this section to the use of a work in an educational establishment are to any use for the educational purposes of such an establishment.
- (5) Subsection (1) does not apply to a literary work that is a computer program.
Compare: 1962 No 33 s 19(6); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 33 (UK)

47 Performing, playing, or showing work in course of activities of educational establishment

- (1) The performance of a literary, dramatic, or musical work before an audience consisting of persons who are students or staff members at an educational establishment or are directly connected with the activities of the establishment—
 - (a) by a student or staff member in the course of the activities of the establishment; or
 - (b) at the establishment, by any person for the purposes of instruction,—is not a performance in public for the purposes of section 32(1).
- (2) The playing or showing, for the purposes of instruction, of a sound recording, film, or communication work to the audience described in subsection (1) at an educational establishment is not a playing or showing of the work in public for the purposes of section 32(2).
- (3) For the purposes of this section, a person shall not be treated as a person directly connected with the activities of an educational establishment by reason only that the person is a parent or guardian of a student at that educational establishment.
Compare: 1962 No 33 s 21(5); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 34 (UK)
Section 47(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 28 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

48 Copying and communication of communication work for educational purposes

- (1) This section applies when a copy of a communication work is—
 - (a) made or communicated by or on behalf of an educational establishment; or

- (b) made and supplied by an educational resource supplier to an educational establishment.
- (2) In any case to which subsection (1)(a) applies, the making or communication of a copy of the communication work by or on behalf of an educational establishment, and the subsequent communication of the copy within the educational establishment, does not infringe copyright in the communication work or in any work included in it if the copy is made or communicated for the educational establishment's educational purposes.
- (3) In any case to which subsection (1)(b) applies, the making and supply of a copy of the communication work by an educational resource supplier does not infringe copyright in the communication work or in any work included in it if the copy is made and supplied for the educational purposes of the educational establishment to which it is supplied.
- (4) However, the exclusions from infringement of copyright in subsections (2) and (3) do not apply to—
 - (a) the copying of a communication work if or to the extent that—
 - (i) licences authorising the copying of the communication work by or on behalf of educational establishments or by educational resource suppliers are available under a licensing scheme; and
 - (ii) the educational establishment or the educational resource supplier, as the case may be, knew that fact; or
 - (b) the communication of a communication work if or to the extent that—
 - (i) licences authorising the communication of the copy by or on behalf of educational establishments are available under a licensing scheme; and
 - (ii) the educational establishment knew that fact; or
 - (c) the supply of a communication work by an educational resource supplier if or to the extent that—
 - (i) licences authorising the supply of the communication work are available under a licensing scheme; and

- (ii) the educational resource supplier knew that fact.

Section 48: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 29 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

49 **Things done for purposes of examination**

Copyright is not infringed by anything done for the purposes of an examination, whether by way of setting the questions, communicating the questions to the candidates, or answering the questions.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 21(4)(b); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 32(3) (UK)

Libraries and archives

50 **Interpretation**

- (1) In sections 51 to 56C, unless the context otherwise requires,—
archive—

- (a) means—
 - (i) Archives New Zealand (Te Rua Mahara o te Kāwanatanga); or
 - (ii) the National Library; or
 - (iii) the sound archive maintained by Radio New Zealand Limited; or
 - (iv) the film archive maintained by Television New Zealand Limited; or
 - (v) the film archive maintained by the New Zealand Film Archive Incorporated; or
 - (vi) any collection of documents (within the meaning of section 2 of the Official Information Act 1982) of historical significance or public interest that is in the custody of and being maintained by a body, whether incorporated or unincorporated, that does not keep and maintain the collection for the purpose of deriving a profit; and
- (b) includes, in relation only to its holding of public archives (within the meaning of section 4 of the Public Records Act 2005), an approved repository within the meaning of that section of that Act

prescribed library means—

- (a) the National Library; or

- (b) the Parliamentary Library; or
 - (c) every law library provided and maintained under section 375(1) of the Lawyers and Conveyancers Act 2006 or provided and maintained by the New Zealand Law Society; or
 - (d) a library maintained by an educational establishment, government department, or local authority; or
 - (e) a library of any other class of library prescribed by regulations made under this Act, not being a library conducted for profit.
- (2) In sections 51 to 56C, every reference to the librarian of a prescribed library or the archivist of an archive shall be read as including a person acting on behalf of the librarian or archivist.
- Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 37(6) (UK)
- Section 50(1): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 30 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).
- Section 50(1) **archive** paragraph (a)(i): substituted, on 21 April 2005, by section 67(1) of the Public Records Act 2005 (2005 No 40).
- Section 50(1) **archive** paragraph (b): substituted, on 21 April 2005, by section 67(1) of the Public Records Act 2005 (2005 No 40).
- Section 50(1) **prescribed library** paragraph (c): substituted, on 1 August 2008, by section 348 of the Lawyers and Conveyancers Act 2006 (2006 No 1).
- Section 50(1) **prescribed library** paragraph (c): amended, on 7 July 2010, by section 4 of the Copyright Amendment Act 2010 (2010 No 55).
- Section 50(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 30 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

51 Copying by librarians of parts of published works

- (1) The librarian of a prescribed library may, if the conditions contained in subsection (2) are complied with, make from a published edition (other than a published edition that is an article in a periodical), for supply to any person, a copy of a reasonable proportion of any literary, dramatic, or musical work, and may include in the copy any artistic work that appears within the proportion copied, without infringing copyright in the literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of the published edition.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are—
- (a) that no person is supplied on the same occasion with more than 1 copy of the same material; and

- (b) that, where any person to whom a copy is supplied is required to pay for the copy, the payment required is no higher than a sum consisting of the total of the cost of production of the copy and a reasonable contribution to the general expenses of the library.
- (3) Where any person is supplied with, or otherwise comes into possession of, a copy made in accordance with this section, that person may use the copy only for the purposes of research or private study.
- (4) This section does not apply to a literary work that is a computer program.
- (5) In this section, **copy** includes a digital copy, but in that case section 56B applies as well.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 21(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 39 (UK)

Section 51(5): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 31 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

52 Copying by librarians of articles in periodicals

- (1) The librarian of a prescribed library may, if the conditions contained in subsection (2) are complied with, make for supply to any person a copy of—
 - (a) a literary, dramatic, or musical work, and any artistic work included in that work, that is contained in an article in a periodical; or
 - (b) a published edition that is an article in a periodical,—without infringing copyright in the literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of the published edition.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are—
 - (a) that no person is supplied on the same occasion with more than 1 copy of the same article; and
 - (b) that no person is supplied on the same occasion with copies of more than 1 article contained in the same issue of a periodical, unless the copies supplied all relate to the same subject matter; and
 - (c) that, where any person to whom a copy is supplied is required to pay for the copy, the payment required is no higher than a sum consisting of the total of the cost of

production of the copy and a reasonable contribution to the general expenses of the library.

- (3) Where any person is supplied with, or otherwise comes into possession of, a copy made in accordance with this section, that person may use the copy only for the purposes of research or private study.
- (4) In this section, **copy** includes a digital copy, but in that case section 56B applies as well.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 21(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 38 (UK)

Section 52(4): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 32 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

53 Copying by librarians for users of other libraries

- (1) The librarian of a prescribed library may, if the condition contained in subsection (2) is complied with, make from a published edition, for supply to another prescribed library, a copy of,—
- (a) subject to paragraph (b), a reasonable proportion of any literary, dramatic, or musical work (and the librarian may include in the copy any artistic work that appears within the proportion copied):
 - (b) in relation to a literary, dramatic, or musical work that is contained in an article in a periodical,—
 - (i) the whole article and any artistic work included in that article; and
 - (ii) if there is any other article in the same issue of the periodical relating to the same subject matter as the first article copied, the whole of that other article and any artistic work included in that article,—
- without infringing copyright in the literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of the published edition.
- (2) The condition referred to in subsection (1) is that a person has requested the library to which the copy is being supplied to supply him or her with the copy for the purposes of research or private study.

- (3) Where any person is supplied with, or otherwise comes into possession of, a copy made in accordance with this section, that person may use the copy only for the purposes of research or private study.
- (4) This section does not apply to a literary work that is a computer program.
- (5) In this section, **copy** includes a digital copy, but in that case section 56C applies as well.

Section 53(5): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 33 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

54 Copying by librarians for collections of other libraries

- (1) The librarian of a prescribed library may, if the conditions contained in subsection (2) are complied with, make a copy of a literary, dramatic, or musical work and any artistic work included in the work, where the copy is—
 - (a) from a published edition that is a book; and
 - (b) for supply to the librarian of another prescribed library,—without infringing copyright in the literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of the published edition.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are that the librarian to whom the copy of the work is supplied—
 - (a) has been unable to obtain the work at an ordinary commercial price within the 6 months preceding the supply; and
 - (b) makes and keeps a record sufficient to identify the work copied; and
 - (c) permits the inspection of the record by the copyright owner during normal office hours; and
 - (d) pays, on demand, equitable remuneration to the copyright owner for the work copied.
- (3) In subsection (2)(d), the term **equitable remuneration** means a sum agreed by the librarian and the copyright owner or, in the absence of agreement, a sum determined by the Tribunal on an application under section 168.
- (4) This section does not apply to a literary work that is a computer program.

- (5) In this section, **copy** includes a digital copy, but in that case section 56C applies as well.

Compare: 1962 No 3 s 21(2); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 41 (UK)

Section 54(5): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 34 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

55 Copying by librarians or archivists to replace copies of works

- (1) The librarian of a prescribed library or the archivist of an archive may make a copy (other than a digital copy) of any item in the collection of the library or archive for the purposes of—
- (a) preserving or replacing that item by placing the copy in the collection of the library or archive in addition to or in place of the item; or
 - (b) replacing in the collection of another prescribed library or archive an item that has been lost, destroyed, or damaged,—
- without infringing copyright in any work included in the item.
- (2) Subsection (1) applies only where it is not reasonably practicable to purchase a copy of the item in question to fulfil the purpose.
- (3) The librarian of a prescribed library or the archivist of an archive may make a digital copy of any item (the **original item**) in the collection of the library or archive without infringing copyright in any work included in the item if—
- (a) the original item is at risk of loss, damage, or destruction; and
 - (b) the digital copy replaces the original item; and
 - (c) the original item is not accessible by members of the public after replacement by the digital copy except for purposes of research the nature of which requires or may benefit from access to the original item; and
 - (d) it is not reasonably practicable to purchase a copy of the original item.
- (4) The librarian of a prescribed library or the archivist of an archive may make a digital copy of any item (the **original**

item) in the collection of the library or archive without infringing copyright in any work included in the item if—

- (a) the digital copy is used to replace an item in the collection of another prescribed library or archive that has been lost, damaged, or destroyed; and
- (b) it is not reasonably practicable to purchase a copy of the original item.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 42 (UK)

Section 55(1): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 35(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 55(3): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 35(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 55(4): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 35(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

56 Copying by librarians or archivists of certain unpublished works

- (1) The librarian of a prescribed library or the archivist of an archive may, if the conditions contained in subsection (3) are complied with, copy for supply to any person a copy of an unpublished work in the library or archive, without infringing copyright in that work.
- (2) This section does not apply if the copyright owner has prohibited copying of the work and at the time the copy is made the librarian or archivist making it is, or ought to be, aware of that fact.
- (3) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are—
 - (a) that no person is supplied on the same occasion with more than 1 copy of the same work; and
 - (b) that, where any person to whom a copy is supplied is required to pay for the copy, the payment required is no higher than a sum consisting of the total of the cost of production of the copy and a reasonable contribution to the general expenses of the library or archive.
- (4) Where any person is supplied with, or otherwise comes into possession of, a copy made in accordance with this section, that person may use the copy only for the purposes of research or private study.

- (5) The provisions of this section do not apply to the sound archive maintained by Radio New Zealand Limited, the film archive maintained by Television New Zealand Limited, or the film archive maintained by the New Zealand Film Archive Incorporated.
- (6) In this section, **copy** includes a digital copy, but in that case section 56B applies as well.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 21(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 43 (UK)

Section 56(6): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 36 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

56A Library or archive may communicate digital copy to authenticated users

- (1) The librarian of a prescribed library or the archivist of an archive does not infringe copyright in a work by communicating a digital copy of the work to an authenticated user if the following conditions are met:
- (a) the librarian or archivist has obtained the digital copy lawfully; and
 - (b) the librarian or archivist ensures that each user is informed in writing about the limits of copying and communication allowed by this Act, including that a digital copy of a work may only be copied or communicated by the user in accordance with the provisions of this Act; and
 - (c) the digital copy is communicated to the user in a form that cannot be altered or modified; and
 - (d) the number of users who access the digital copy at any one time is not more than the aggregate number of digital copies of the work that—
 - (i) the library or the archive has purchased; or
 - (ii) for which it is licensed.
- (2) In subsection (1), **authenticated user** means a person who—
- (a) has a legitimate right to use the services of the library or archive; and
 - (b) can access the digital copy only through a verification process that verifies that the person is entitled to access the digital copy.

Section 56A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 37 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

56B Additional conditions for supply of copy of work in digital format by librarian or archivist under section 51, 52, or 56

A copy of a work to which section 51, 52, or 56 applies must not be supplied in a digital format, by the librarian of a prescribed library or the archivist of an archive, to a person (A) unless the following conditions are also complied with:

- (a) the librarian or archivist must give A, when the copy is supplied, a written notice that sets out the terms of use of the copy; and
- (b) the librarian or archivist must, as soon as is reasonably practicable, destroy any additional copy made in the process of making the copy that is supplied to A.

Section 56B: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 37 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

56C Additional condition for making digital copies under section 53 or 54

A copy of a work to which section 53 or 54 applies must not be supplied in a digital format to a library unless the librarian supplying the digital copy destroys, as soon as is reasonably practicable, any additional copy made in the process of making the copy that is supplied.

Section 56C: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 37 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

57 Playing or showing sound recordings or films

- (1) The sound archive maintained by Radio New Zealand Limited may play a sound recording held in the archive to an audience consisting of members of the public, without infringing copyright in the sound recording or in any work included in the sound recording, if the condition contained in subsection (3) is complied with.
- (2) The film archive maintained by Television New Zealand Limited or by the New Zealand Film Archive Incorporated may show a film, and play any sound recording associated with the film, held in the archive to an audience consisting of

members of the public, without infringing copyright in the film or in any sound recording associated with the film or in any work included in the film or sound recording, if the condition contained in subsection (3) is complied with.

- (3) The condition referred to in subsections (1) and (2) is that, where any person is required to pay to—
 - (a) hear any sound recording played under subsection (1); or
 - (b) see any film shown, and hear any sound recording associated with the film played, under subsection (2),—
the payment required is no more than a reasonable contribution towards the maintenance of the archive in which the sound recording or film is held.
- (4) This section does not apply if or to the extent that licences authorising the playing of a sound recording, or the showing of a film and the playing of a sound recording associated with the film, by an archive to which this section applies are available and if the archive knew that fact.

Public administration

58 Copying by Parliamentary Library for members of Parliament

- (1) An officer of the Parliamentary Library may, if the conditions contained in subsection (3) are complied with, supply to any member of Parliament a copy of a literary or dramatic work, and any artistic work included in that work, without infringing copyright in that literary, dramatic, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of a published edition.
- (2) An officer of the Parliamentary Library may, if the conditions contained in subsection (3) are complied with, supply to any member of Parliament a recording of a communication work or a transcript of a recording of the communication work, without infringing copyright in the communication work or any work included in that communication work.
- (3) The conditions referred to in subsections (1) and (2) are—
 - (a) that no member of Parliament is supplied on the same occasion with more than 1 copy or recording or transcript, as the case may be, of the same material; and

- (b) that the copy or recording or transcript is required by that member of Parliament for the purposes of performing his or her duties as such a member.

Section 58(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 38 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

59 Parliamentary and judicial proceedings

- (1) Copyright is not infringed by anything done for the purposes of parliamentary or judicial proceedings.
- (2) Copyright is not infringed by anything done for the purposes of reporting parliamentary or judicial proceedings.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 19(4), 20(7); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 45 (UK)

60 Royal commissions and statutory inquiries

- (1) Copyright is not infringed by anything done for the purposes of the proceedings of a Royal commission, commission of inquiry, ministerial inquiry, or statutory inquiry.
- (2) Copyright is not infringed by anything done for the purposes of reporting any proceedings of a Royal commission, commission of inquiry, ministerial inquiry, or statutory inquiry that are held in public.
- (3) Copyright in a work is not infringed by the issue to the public of copies of the report of a Royal commission, commission of inquiry, ministerial inquiry, or statutory inquiry containing the work or material from it.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 46 (UK)

61 Material open to public inspection or on official register

- (1) Subject to any Order in Council made under subsection (4), where material is open to public inspection or public reference pursuant to a statutory requirement, or is on a statutory register, copyright in the material is not infringed by the copying of the material, by or with the authority of the appropriate person, for a purpose that does not involve the issuing of copies to the public.
- (2) Subject to any Order in Council made under subsection (4), where material is open to public inspection or public reference pursuant to a statutory requirement, copyright is not infringed

by the copying or issuing to the public of copies of the material, by or with the authority of the appropriate person, for the purpose of enabling the material to be inspected at a more convenient time or place or otherwise facilitating the exercise of any right for the purpose of which the requirement is imposed.

- (3) Subject to any Order in Council made under subsection (4), where material that is open to public inspection or public reference pursuant to a statutory requirement, or that is on a statutory register, contains information about matters of general scientific, technical, commercial, or economic interest, copyright is not infringed by the copying or issuing to the public of copies of the material, by or with the authority of the appropriate person, for the purpose of disseminating that information.
- (4) The Governor-General may from time to time, by Order in Council, provide that all or any of subsections (1) to (3) shall, in such cases as may be specified in the order, apply only to copies marked in such manner as may be so specified.
- (5) The Governor-General may from time to time, by Order in Council, provide that all or any of subsections (1) to (3) apply, to such extent and with such modifications as may be specified in the order, in relation to—
 - (a) material made open to public inspection or public reference by—
 - (i) an international organisation specified in the order; or
 - (ii) a person specified in the order who has functions in New Zealand under an international agreement to which New Zealand is a party; or
 - (b) a register maintained by an international organisation specified in the order,—as those provisions apply in relation to material open to public inspection or public reference pursuant to a statutory requirement or by virtue of being on a statutory register.
- (6) In this section,—

appropriate person means the person required to make the material open to public inspection or public reference or, as the case may be, the person maintaining the register

statutory register means a register maintained pursuant to a statutory requirement

statutory requirement means a requirement imposed by a provision of an enactment.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 61; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 47, 49 (UK)

62 Material communicated to the Crown in course of public business

- (1) This section applies where—
- (a) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work has, in the course of public business, been communicated to the Crown for any purpose, by or with the licence of the copyright owner; and
 - (b) a document (within the meaning of section 2 of the Official Information Act 1982) recording or embodying the work is owned by, or is in the custody or control of, the Crown.
- (2) The Crown may, for—
- (a) the purpose for which the work was communicated to the Crown; or
 - (b) any related purpose that could reasonably have been anticipated by the copyright owner,—
- copy the work, and issue copies of the work to the public, without infringing copyright in the work.
- (3) The Crown may not copy a work, or issue copies of a work to the public, under this section if the work has previously been published otherwise than under this section.
- (4) In subsection (1), the term **public business** includes any activity carried on by the Crown.
- (5) This section has effect subject to any agreement to the contrary between the Crown and the copyright owner.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 48 (UK)

63 Use of copyright material for services of the Crown

- (1) Copyright in a work is not infringed by anything done in relation to the work, by or on behalf of the Crown or any person authorised in writing by a government department,—

- (a) for the purpose of national security or during a period of emergency; or
 - (b) in the interests of the safety or health of the public or any members of the public.
- (2) Where any act is done under subsection (1), the Crown shall be liable to pay, out of money appropriated by Parliament for the purpose, equitable remuneration to the copyright owner upon such terms as may be agreed upon between the Crown and the copyright owner or, in the absence of agreement, upon such terms as shall be determined by the Tribunal.
- (3) No act to which subsection (1) applies shall—
- (a) constitute publication of a work; or
 - (b) affect the term of copyright in a work.
- Compare: 1962 No 33 s 53(1), (3), (4)

64 Rights of third parties in respect of Crown use

- (1) No provision of any assignment or licence in force between the copyright owner and a person other than a government department shall be effective to prevent any act being done in relation to a copyright work, where that act is done under section 63.
- (2) Where—
- (a) an act is done under section 63; and
 - (b) an exclusive licence is in force in respect of the work in relation to which the act is done,—
- the Crown shall be liable to pay, out of money appropriated by Parliament for the purpose, equitable remuneration to the licensee upon such terms as may be agreed between the Crown and the licensee or, in the absence of agreement, upon such terms as shall be determined by the Tribunal.
- (3) Where—
- (a) a person has a right in relation to a work, by any licence other than an exclusive licence; and
 - (b) a payment is made, in respect of that work, under section 63 to the copyright owner or under subsection (2) to the exclusive licensee,—
- the person is entitled to recover from the owner or exclusive licensee, as the case may be, such part of any payment as may be agreed between that person and the copyright owner or the

exclusive licensee, as the case may be, or, in the absence of agreement, as shall be determined by the Tribunal.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 54

65 Proceedings against the Crown

- (1) Where any employee or agent of the Crown infringes copyright in a work, and the infringement is committed with the authority of the Crown, civil proceedings in respect of the infringement shall, subject to this Act, lie against the Crown under the Crown Proceedings Act 1950.
- (2) Nothing in subsection (1) shall affect the rights of the Crown, or any person authorised by a government department, under section 63.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 55(1), (2)

66 Acts done under statutory authority

- (1) Where the doing of a particular act is specifically authorised by an enactment, the doing of that act does not infringe copyright, unless the enactment provides otherwise.
- (2) Nothing in this section shall be construed as excluding any defence of statutory authority otherwise available under or pursuant to any enactment.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 50 (UK)

Literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works

67 Acts permitted on assumptions as to expiry of copyright or death of author in relation to anonymous or pseudonymous works

- (1) Copyright in a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work is not infringed by any act done at a time when, or in pursuance of arrangements made at a time when,—
 - (a) it is not possible for a person who wishes to do so to ascertain the identity of the author by reasonable inquiry; and
 - (b) it is reasonable to assume—
 - (i) that copyright has expired; or

- (ii) that the author died 50 years or more before the beginning of the calendar year in which the act is done or the arrangements are made.
- (2) Subsection (1)(b)(ii) does not apply in relation to—
 - (a) a work in which Crown copyright exists under section 26; or
 - (b) a work—
 - (i) in which copyright originally vested in an international organisation under section 28; and
 - (ii) in respect of which an order made under that section specifies a copyright period longer than 50 years.
- (3) In relation to a work of joint authorship,—
 - (a) the reference in subsection (1)(a) to its being possible to ascertain the identity of the author shall be construed as a reference to its being possible to ascertain the identity of any of the authors; and
 - (b) the reference in subsection (1)(b)(ii) to the author having died shall be construed as a reference to all the authors having died.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 57 (UK)

68 Use of recording of spoken words in certain cases

- (1) Where a recording of spoken words is made, in writing or otherwise, for the purpose of—
 - (a) reporting current events; or
 - (b) communicating to the public the whole or part of the work,—it is not an infringement of copyright in the words as a literary work to use the recording or material taken from it (or to copy the recording, or any such material, and use the copy) for that purpose, if the conditions in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are that—
 - (a) the recording is a direct record of the spoken words and is not taken from a previous recording or from a communication work; and
 - (b) the making of the recording was not prohibited by the speaker and, where copyright already existed in the work, did not infringe copyright; and

- (c) the use made of the recording or material taken from it is not of a kind prohibited by or on behalf of the speaker or copyright owner before the recording was made; and
- (d) the use is by or with the authority of a person who is lawfully in possession of the recording.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 58 (UK)

Section 68(1)(b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 39(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 68(2)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 39(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

69 Provision of Braille copies of literary or dramatic works

- (1) A body prescribed by regulations made under this Act may, if the conditions contained in subsection (2) are complied with, make or communicate copies or adaptations of published literary or dramatic works for the purpose of providing persons who have a print disability with copies that are in Braille or otherwise modified for their special needs, without infringing copyright in those literary or dramatic works.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are—
 - (a) that the prescribed body has made reasonable efforts to obtain a copy of the complete work, in Braille or otherwise modified as required by the person or persons to whom it is to be provided, within a reasonable time at an ordinary commercial price, but has been unable to do so; and
 - (b) that the copies are provided only to persons having a print disability; and
 - (c) that, where any body makes a copy or adaptation of a published literary or dramatic work under this section, the body shall, as soon as is reasonably practicable, take all reasonable steps to notify the owner of the copyright in the work of the making of the copy or adaptation; and
 - (d) that, where any person to whom a copy is provided is required to pay for the copy, the payment required is no higher than a sum consisting of the total cost of the production of the copy and a reasonable contribution to the general expenses of the prescribed body.

- (3) A body shall not be prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1) if it is established or conducted for profit.
- (4) For the purposes of this section, a person has a **print disability** if he or she—
- (a) is blind; or
 - (b) suffers severe impairment of his or her sight; or
 - (c) is unable to hold or manipulate books; or
 - (d) is unable to focus or move his or her eyes; or
 - (e) suffers a handicap with respect to visual perception.

Section 69(1): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 40 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

70 Public reading or recitation

- (1) The reading in public or recitation in public by 1 person of a reasonable extract from a published literary or dramatic work shall not be treated as a performance in public for the purposes of section 32(1), if that reading or recitation is accompanied by a sufficient acknowledgement.
- (2) Copyright in a work is not infringed by the making of a sound recording, or the communication to the public, of a reading or recitation that under subsection (1) is not treated as a performance in public, if the recording or communication work consists mainly of material in relation to which it is not necessary to rely on that subsection.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 19(8); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 59 (UK)

Section 70(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 41 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

71 Abstracts of scientific or technical articles

Where an article on a scientific or technical subject is published in a periodical accompanied by an abstract indicating the contents of the article, it is not an infringement of copyright in the abstract, or in the article, to copy the abstract or issue copies of the abstract to the public.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 60(1) (UK)

72 Recordings of folk songs

- (1) A sound recording of a performance of a song may be made for the purpose of including the song in an archive maintained by a body prescribed by regulations made under this Act, without infringing copyright in the words as a literary work or in the accompanying musical work, if the conditions in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are that—
 - (a) the words are unpublished and of unknown authorship at the time the recording is made; and
 - (b) the making of the recording does not infringe any other copyright; and
 - (c) the making of the recording is not prohibited by any performer.
- (3) Copies of a sound recording made in reliance on subsection (1) and included in an archive maintained by a body prescribed by regulations made under this Act may, if the condition contained in subsection (4) is complied with, be made and supplied by the archivist without infringing copyright in the recording or the works included in it.
- (4) The condition referred to in subsection (3) is that no person is furnished with more than 1 copy of the same recording.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 61 (UK)

73 Representation of certain artistic works on public display

- (1) This section applies to the following works:
 - (a) buildings;
 - (b) works (being sculptures, models for buildings, or works of artistic craftsmanship) that are permanently situated in a public place or in premises open to the public.
- (2) Copyright in a work to which this section applies is not infringed by—
 - (a) copying the work by making a graphic work representing it; or
 - (b) copying the work by making a photograph or film of it; or
 - (c) communicating to the public a visual image of the work.

- (3) Copyright is not infringed by the issue to the public of copies, or the communication to the public, of anything the making of which was, under this section, not an infringement of copyright.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 62 (UK)

Section 73(2)(c): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 42(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 73(3): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 42(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

74 Special exception from protection of literary or artistic works

- (1) The making of any object in 3 dimensions (including, subject to subsection (2), a copy in 2 dimensions reasonably required for the making of the object) does not infringe copyright in a literary or artistic work, if the work or a copy of it forms part of—
- (a) a patent specification that—
 - (i) is open to public inspection in the New Zealand Patent Office in respect of a New Zealand patent that, for any reason, has ceased to have effect; and
 - (ii) is used for the purpose of making the object; or
 - (b) a representation or specimen of a design that—
 - (i) is open to public inspection in the New Zealand Patent Office in respect of a design for which registered protection in New Zealand has ceased; and
 - (ii) is used for the purpose of making the object.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not authorise—
- (a) the making of a copy in 2 dimensions of an artistic work—
 - (i) to which subsection (1) applies; and
 - (ii) that is in 2 dimensions,—where the copy is made directly from that artistic work; or
 - (b) the making of a copy of a literary work to which subsection (1) applies, where the copy is made directly from that literary work.

- (3) Where a patent that has ceased to have effect is restored by an order made under section 35 of the Patents Act 1953, nothing done pursuant to subsection (1) in the period beginning with the day on which the patent ceased to have effect and ending with the close of the day on which the order is made shall constitute an infringement of copyright in any literary or artistic work or copy of the work forming part of the patent specification.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 20A; 1985 No 134 s 4

75 Special exception from protection of artistic work that has been applied industrially

- (1) The making of—
- (a) any object in 3 dimensions; or
 - (b) subject to subsection (3), a copy in 2 dimensions reasonably required for the making of the object—
does not infringe copyright in an artistic work if, when the object or copy is made, the artistic work has been applied industrially, in New Zealand or in any other country, by or with the licence of the copyright owner,—
 - (c) in the case of a work of artistic craftsmanship, more than 25 years before the object or copy is made:
 - (d) in the case of a sculpture that is a cast or pattern for an object that has a primarily utilitarian function, more than 16 years before the object or copy is made:
 - (e) subject to subsection (2), in the case of any other artistic work, more than 16 years before the object or copy is made.
- (2) Subsection (1) does not apply to—
- (a) a sculpture that is not a cast or pattern for an object that has a primarily utilitarian function; or
 - (b) a work of architecture, being a building or a model for a building.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not authorise the making of a copy in 2 dimensions of an artistic work that is in 2 dimensions, where the copy is made directly from that artistic work.
- (4) For the purposes of subsection (1), an artistic work is applied industrially if—

- (a) more than 50 copies in 3 dimensions are made of the work, for the purposes of sale or hire; or
 - (b) the work is copied in 3 dimensions in 1 or more objects manufactured in lengths, for the purposes of sale or hire; or
 - (c) the work is copied as a plate that has been used to produce—
 - (i) more than 50 copies of an object in 3 dimensions for the purpose of sale or hire; or
 - (ii) 1 or more objects in 3 dimensions manufactured in lengths for the purposes of sale or hire.
- (5) For the purposes of subsection (4), 2 or more copies in 3 dimensions that are of the same general character and intended for use together are a single copy.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 20B; 1985 No 134 s 5

76 Special exception from protection of literary and artistic works relating to medicines

The copying or adaptation or publication of a literary work or an artistic work does not infringe copyright in that work if that work—

- (a) relates to a medicine that has been imported by the Crown pursuant to section 32A of the Medicines Act 1981; and
- (b) has been made, copied, published, adapted, or distributed, in an overseas country, by or with the licence of the owner of the copyright in the work in that country.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 20C; 1990 No 71 s 5

77 Making of subsequent works by same artist

Where the author of an artistic work is not the copyright owner, he or she does not infringe copyright in that work by copying the work in making another artistic work, if the main design of the earlier work is not repeated or imitated.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 20(9); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 64 (UK)

78 Reconstruction of buildings

Anything done for the purposes of reconstructing a building does not infringe copyright—

- (a) in the building; or
- (b) in any drawings or plans in accordance with which the building was, by or with the licence of the copyright owner, constructed.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 20(10); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 65 (UK)

Computer programs, sound recordings, and films

79 Rental by educational establishments and libraries

Copyright in a work (being a computer program, sound recording, or film) is not infringed by the rental of that work to any person by an educational establishment or a prescribed library within the meaning of section 50, where—

- (a) the educational establishment or prescribed library does not effect the rental of the work for the purposes of making a profit; and
- (b) the work that is the subject of the rental has previously been put into circulation with the licence of the copyright owner.

80 Back-up copy of computer program

(1) Subject to subsection (3), copyright in a computer program is not infringed by the making of a copy of the computer program if—

- (a) the copy is made by or on behalf of the lawful user of the copy of the program (in this section referred to as the **original copy**) from which the first-mentioned copy is made; and
- (b) the copy is made solely for the purpose of being used by or on behalf of the lawful user of the original copy—
 - (i) instead of the original copy in order to preserve the original copy for use if the copy is lost, destroyed, or rendered unusable; or
 - (ii) if the original copy is lost, destroyed, or rendered unusable.

- (2) If the original copy is lost, destroyed, or rendered unusable, the copy made pursuant to subsection (1) shall be deemed for the purposes of this section to be the original copy.
- (3) Subsection (1) does not apply to the making of a copy of a computer program—
 - (a) from an infringing copy of the computer program; or
 - (b) contrary to an express direction by or on behalf of the owner of the copyright in the computer program given to the lawful user of the original copy not later than the time when the lawful user of the original copy acquired that original copy.
- (4) For the purposes of this section,—
 - (a) a reference to a computer program includes a reference to an adaptation of that program; and
 - (b) a reference to a copy of a computer program is a reference to any object in which the program is reproduced in a material form; and
 - (c) a reference to an express direction, in relation to a copy of a computer program, includes a reference to a clearly legible direction printed on the copy or on a package in which the copy is supplied.

Compare: Copyright Act 1968 s 43A (Aust)

80A Decompilation of computer program

- (1) The lawful user of a copy of a computer program expressed in a low level language does not infringe copyright in the program by decompiling it, if the conditions in subsection (2) are met.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are that—
 - (a) decompilation is necessary to obtain information necessary for the objective of creating an independent program that can be operated with the program decompiled or with another program; and
 - (b) the information obtained from the decompilation is not used for any purpose other than the objective referred to in paragraph (a).
- (3) In particular, the conditions in subsection (2) are not met if—

- (a) the information necessary to create the independent program is readily available to the lawful user without decompiling the computer program; or
 - (b) the lawful user does not confine decompilation of the computer program strictly to the steps that are necessary to create an independent program; or
 - (c) the lawful user gives the information obtained from decompiling the computer program to any person when it is not necessary for creating an independent program to do so; or
 - (d) the lawful user uses the information obtained from decompiling the computer program to create a program that is substantially similar in its expression to the program that has been decompiled; or
 - (e) the lawful user uses the information obtained from decompiling the computer program to do any act that is restricted by copyright.
- (4) In this section, **decompile** means—
- (a) to convert a computer program expressed in a low level language into a version expressed in a higher level language; or
 - (b) to copy the program as a necessary incident of converting it into that version.

Section 80A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 43 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

80B Copying or adapting computer program if necessary for lawful use

- (1) The lawful user of a computer program (**A**) does not infringe copyright in it by copying or adapting it, if—
 - (a) copying or adapting it is necessary for A's lawful use of the program (for example, to correct an error in the program); and
 - (b) a properly functioning and error-free copy of the program is not available to A within a reasonable time at an ordinary commercial price.
- (2) This section does not apply to copying or adapting that is permitted under section 80A or 80C.

Section 80B: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 43 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

80C Observing, studying, or testing of computer program

The lawful user of a computer program (A) does not infringe copyright in it by observing, studying, or testing the functioning of the program in order to determine the ideas and principles that underlie any element of the program if A does so while performing the acts of loading, displaying, running, transmitting, or storing the program that A is entitled to do.

Section 80C: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 43 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

80D Certain contractual terms relating to use of computer programs have no effect

A term or condition in an agreement for the use of a computer program has no effect in so far as it prohibits or restricts any activity undertaken in accordance with section 80A(2) or 80B(1).

Section 80D: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 43 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

81 Playing of sound recordings for purposes of club, society, etc

- (1) It is not an infringement of copyright in a sound recording to play the sound recording as part of the activities of, or for the benefit of, a club, society, or other organisation, if the conditions contained in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are—
 - (a) that the club, society, or organisation is not established or conducted for profit; and
 - (b) that the main objects of the club, society, or organisation are charitable or are otherwise concerned with the advancement of religion, education, or social welfare; and
 - (c) that the proceeds of any charge for admission to the place where the recording is to be heard are applied

solely for the purposes of the club, society, or organisation.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 13(6); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 67 (UK)

81A Copying sound recording for personal use

- (1) Copyright in a sound recording and in a literary or musical work contained in it is not infringed by copying the sound recording, if the following conditions are met:
- (a) the sound recording is not a communication work or part of a communication work; and
 - (b) the copy is made from a sound recording that is not an infringing copy; and
 - (c) the sound recording is not borrowed or hired; and
 - (d) the copy is made by the owner of the sound recording; and
 - (e) that owner acquired the sound recording legitimately; and
 - (f) the copy is used only for that owner's personal use or the personal use of a member of the household in which the owner lives or both; and
 - (g) no more than 1 copy is made for each device for playing sound recordings that is owned by the owner of the sound recording; and
 - (h) the owner of the sound recording retains the ownership of both the sound recording and of any copy that is made under this section.
- (2) For the avoidance of doubt, subsection (1) does not apply if the owner of the sound recording is bound by a contract that specifies the circumstances in which the sound recording may be copied.

Section 81A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 44 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Communication works

Heading: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 45 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

82 Recording for purposes of maintaining standards in programmes

The author of a communication work does not infringe copyright in it, or in any work included in it, by recording it, if the recording is made and used solely for the purpose of checking on the maintenance of standards in communication works made by the author.

Section 82: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 45 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

83 Recording for purposes of complaining

- (1) A person (A) does not infringe copyright in a communication work, or in any work included in it, by recording it or communicating it or both to a complaint authority, if the recording or the communication or both are done solely for the purpose of complaining to a complaint authority.
- (2) However, subsection (1) does not apply, and A does infringe copyright in the communication work recorded and in any work included in the recording, if A retains the recording for any longer than is reasonably necessary to prepare and despatch the complaint.
- (3) If a person infringes copyright under subsection (2), the recording is treated as an infringing copy.
- (4) In this section and in section 84, **complaint authority** means any person or body that is responsible for dealing with complaints about the content of communication works, including the content of advertisements in communication works.

Section 83: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 45 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

84 Recording for purposes of time shifting

- (1) A person (A) does not infringe copyright in a programme included in a communication work, or in any work included in it, by recording it, if—
 - (a) A makes the recording solely for A's personal use or the personal use of a member of the household in which A lives or both; and

- (b) A makes the recording solely for the purpose of viewing or listening to the recording at a more convenient time; and
 - (c) the recording is not made from an on-demand service; and
 - (d) A has lawful access to the communication work at the time of making the recording.
- (2) However, subsection (1) does not apply, and A does infringe copyright in the communication work recorded and in any work included in the communication work, if—
- (a) A retains the recording for any longer than is reasonably necessary for viewing or listening to the recording at a more convenient time; or
 - (b) in the event that the person who views or listens to the recording wishes to make a complaint to a complaint authority, A retains the recording for any longer than is reasonably necessary to prepare and despatch the complaint.
- (3) If a person infringes copyright under subsection (2), the recording is treated as an infringing copy.

Example

A records a movie to be screened on television because she will be at work when it screens. She watches the movie on the weekend and then later tapes over it. Provided the conditions in s 84(1) are met, the copy that A makes is not an infringing copy.

B copies music from a streamed Internet audio service and keeps the copy as part of B's music collection, in order to listen to it multiple times on demand. Copies made for the home library or collection in this way are infringing copies.

Section 84: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 45 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

85 Incidental recording for purposes of communication

- (1) This section applies where, under an assignment or a licence, a person is authorised to communicate the following works to the public:
- (a) a literary, dramatic, or musical work, or an adaptation of that work; or
 - (b) an artistic work; or

- (c) a sound recording or film.
- (2) Where this section applies, the person so authorised may, without the consent of the copyright owner but only if the conditions contained in subsection (3) are complied with, do or authorise the doing of any of the following acts for the purposes of the communication work:
 - (a) in the case of a literary, dramatic, or musical work, or an adaptation of such a work, copy the work or adaptation by making a sound recording or film of the work or adaptation:
 - (b) in the case of an artistic work, copy the work by taking a photograph or making a film of the work:
 - (c) in the case of a sound recording or a film, make a copy of the recording or film.
- (3) The conditions referred to in subsection (2) are—
 - (a) that the recording, film, photograph, or copy is not used for any other purpose; and
 - (b) that the recording, film, photograph, or copy is destroyed within 6 months of being first used for communicating the work to the public, unless the Minister has authorised the preservation of any recording, film, photograph, or copy in the records of a government department or in Archives New Zealand (Te Rua Mahara o te Kāwanatanga) because of its documentary character or exceptional importance.
- (4) A recording, film, photograph, or copy made in accordance with this section shall be treated as an infringing copy—
 - (a) for the purposes of any use in breach of the condition contained in subsection (3)(a); and
 - (b) for all purposes after either of the conditions contained in subsection (3) is broken.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 19(9), (10); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 68 (UK)

Section 85 heading: amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 46(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 85(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 46(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 85(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 46(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 85(3)(b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 46(4) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 85(3)(b): amended, on 21 April 2005, by section 67(1) of the Public Records Act 2005 (2005 No 40).

86 Photographs of television broadcasts or cable programmes
[Repealed]

Section 86: repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 47 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

87 Free public playing or showing of broadcast or cable programme

- (1) The playing in public or showing in public of a broadcast (other than a broadcast to which subsections (4) to (7) apply) or cable programme to an audience who have not paid for admission to the place where the broadcast or cable programme is to be heard or seen does not infringe any copyright in—
- (a) the broadcast or cable programme; or
 - (b) any sound recording or film included in the broadcast or programme.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), the audience shall be treated as having paid for admission to a place—
- (a) if they have paid for admission to a place of which that place forms part; or
 - (b) if goods or services are supplied at that place, or a place of which that place forms part,—
 - (i) at prices that are substantially attributable to the facilities afforded for hearing or seeing the broadcast or cable programme; or
 - (ii) at prices exceeding those usually charged there and that are partly attributable to those facilities; or
 - (c) if the place is a hotel, motel, camping ground, or any other place that admits persons for a fee for the purposes of obtaining accommodation of a temporary nature and they are persons residing at the hotel, motel, camping ground, or other place.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1), the following persons shall not be treated as having paid for admission to a place:

- (a) persons admitted as residents or inmates of a place (other than a hotel, motel, camping ground, or other place to which subsection (2)(c) applies):
 - (b) persons admitted as members of a club or society where the payment is only for membership of the club or society and the provision of facilities for hearing or seeing broadcasts or cable programmes is only incidental to the main purposes of the club or society.
- (4) Subsections (5) to (7) apply in respect of the playing or showing of a broadcast—
 - (a) that is made for reception in the area in which it is played or shown; and
 - (b) that is not a satellite transmission or an encrypted transmission; and
 - (c) that is shown or played simultaneously upon reception of the transmission of the broadcast.
- (5) The playing in public or showing in public of a broadcast to which subsection (4) applies to an audience who have not paid for admission to the place where the broadcast is to be heard or seen does not infringe any copyright in—
 - (a) the broadcast; or
 - (b) any sound recording or film included in the broadcast.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5), the audience shall be treated as having paid for admission to a place—
 - (a) if they have paid for admission to a place of which that place forms part; or
 - (b) if goods or services are supplied at that place, or a place of which that place forms part,—
 - (i) at prices that are substantially attributable to the facilities afforded for hearing or seeing the broadcast; or
 - (ii) at prices exceeding those usually charged there and that are partly attributable to those facilities.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (5), the following persons shall not be treated as having paid for admission to a place:
 - (a) persons admitted as residents or inmates of a place (including, without limitation, persons residing in a hotel, motel, camping ground, or any other place that admits

- persons for a fee for the purposes of obtaining accommodation of a temporary nature):
- (b) persons admitted as members of a club or society where the payment is only for membership of the club or society and the provision of facilities for hearing or seeing broadcasts or cable programmes is only incidental to the main purposes of the club or society.
- (8) Where the making of the broadcast or inclusion of the programme in a cable programme service was an infringement of the copyright in a sound recording or film, the fact that the broadcast or programme was heard or seen in public by the reception of the broadcast or cable programme shall be taken into account in assessing the damages for that infringement.
- Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 72 (UK)

88 Reception and retransmission of broadcast in cable programme service

- (1) This section applies where a broadcast made from a place in New Zealand is, by reception and immediate retransmission, included in a cable programme service.
- (2) Where this section applies,—
 - (a) copyright in the broadcast is not infringed if and to the extent that the broadcast—
 - (i) is made for reception in the area in which the cable programme service is provided; and
 - (ii) is not a satellite transmission or an encrypted transmission;
 - (b) copyright in any work included in the broadcast is not infringed if and to the extent that the broadcast is made for reception in the area in which the cable programme service is provided;
 - (c) where the making of the broadcast was an infringement of the copyright in any work included in the broadcast, the fact that the broadcast was retransmitted as a programme in a cable programme service shall be taken into account in assessing the damages for that infringement.
- (3) This section does not apply if or to the extent that licences authorising the reception and immediate retransmission of a

broadcast and any work included in the broadcast are available to the person providing the cable programme service under a licensing scheme and the person providing the cable programme service knew that fact.

- (4) For the purposes of this section only,—
- (a) sections 3 and 4 of this Act before repeal by the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 continue to apply as if they had not been repealed and as if references in those provisions to “this Act” were references to this section; and
 - (b) the definition of broadcast in section 2(1) of this Act before repeal by the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 continues to apply as if that definition had not been repealed.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 60; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 73 (UK)
Section 88(4): added, on 31 October 2008, by section 49 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

89 Provision of subtitled copies of communication work

- (1) A body prescribed by regulation made under this Act may, for the purpose of providing people who are deaf or hard of hearing, or physically or mentally disabled in any other way, with copies that are subtitled or otherwise modified for their special needs, make copies of a communication work and issue copies to the public, without infringing any copyright in the communication work or in any work included in the communication work.
- (2) A body must not be prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1) if it is established or conducted for profit.

Section 89: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 50 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

90 Recording for archival purposes

- (1) A person (A) does not infringe copyright in a communication work, or in any work included in it, by recording it or making a copy of a recording of it, if—
- (a) the communication work is in a class of communication work prescribed by regulations made under this Act; and

- (b) A makes the recording or the copy for the purpose of placing it in an archive maintained by a body prescribed by regulations made under this Act.
- (2) A body shall not be prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1) if it is established or conducted for profit.
Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 75 (UK)
Section 90(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 51 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

91 Recording by media monitors

- (1) This section applies to a recording, or a transcript of a recording, of a communication work that consists wholly or substantially of news or reports or discussions of current events.
- (1A) The person who makes the recording or transcript does not infringe copyright in the communication work, or in any work included in the communication work, if the conditions in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1A) are—
 - (a) that the recording—
 - (i) is played solely to enable the making of a transcript of it; and
 - (ii) is destroyed as soon as is reasonably practicable after the transcript is made and not later than 1 month after the recording is made; and
 - (b) that the transcript of the recording is made only—
 - (i) by or on behalf of the person who made the recording; and
 - (ii) for the use of that person or in response to a request from another person for a transcript of the recording; and
 - (c) that copies of the transcript are made only—
 - (i) by or on behalf of the person who made the recording; and
 - (ii) for the use of that person or in response to a request from another person for a copy of a transcript of the recording; and
 - (d) that the person who made the recording pays equitable remuneration to the copyright owner.

- (3) In subsection (2)(d), the term **equitable remuneration** means a sum agreed by the person who makes the recording and the copyright owner or, in the absence of agreement, a sum determined by the Tribunal on an application under section 168.
- (4) This section does not apply if or to the extent that licences authorising the recording of the communication work and the making of transcripts of the recordings are available under a licensing scheme and the person making the recording knew that fact.

Section 91(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 52(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 91(1A): inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 52(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 91(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 52(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 91(4): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 52(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Adaptations

92 Adaptations

An act that under this Act may be done without infringing copyright in a literary, dramatic, or musical work does not, where that work is an adaptation, infringe any copyright in the work from which the adaptation was made.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 76 (UK)

Internet service provider liability

Heading: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 53 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

92A Internet service provider must have policy for terminating accounts of repeat infringers

- (1) An Internet service provider must adopt and reasonably implement a policy that provides for termination, in appropriate circumstances, of the account with that Internet service provider of a repeat infringer.
- (2) In subsection (1), **repeat infringer** means a person who repeatedly infringes the copyright in a work by using 1 or more

of the Internet services of the Internet service provider to do a restricted act without the consent of the copyright owner.

Section 92A: inserted (but not yet in force), on 31 October 2008, by section 53 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

92B Internet service provider liability if user infringes copyright

- (1) This section applies if a person (A) infringes the copyright in a work by using 1 or more of the Internet services of an Internet service provider to do a restricted act without the consent of the copyright owner.
- (2) Merely because A uses the Internet services of the Internet service provider in infringing the copyright, the Internet service provider, without more,—
 - (a) does not infringe the copyright in the work:
 - (b) must not be taken to have authorised A's infringement of copyright in the work:
 - (c) subject to subsection (3), must not be subject to any civil remedy or criminal sanction.
- (3) However, nothing in this section limits the right of the copyright owner to injunctive relief in relation to A's infringement or any infringement by the Internet service provider.
- (4) In subsections (1) and (2), **Internet services** means the services referred to in the definition of Internet service provider in section 2(1).

Section 92B: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 53 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

92C Internet service provider liability for storing infringing material

- (1) This section applies if—
 - (a) an Internet service provider stores material provided by a user of the service; and
 - (b) the material infringes copyright in a work (other than as a result of any modification by the Internet service provider).
- (2) The Internet service provider does not infringe copyright in the work by storing the material unless—
 - (a) the Internet service provider—

- (i) knows or has reason to believe that the material infringes copyright in the work; and
 - (ii) does not, as soon as possible after becoming aware of the infringing material, delete the material or prevent access to it; or
- (b) the user of the service who provided the material is acting on behalf of, or at the direction of, the Internet service provider.
- (3) A court, in determining whether, for the purposes of subsection (2), an Internet service provider knows or has reason to believe that material infringes copyright in a work, must take account of all relevant matters, including whether the Internet service provider has received a notice of infringement in relation to the infringement.
- (4) An Internet service provider who deletes a user's material or prevents access to it because the Internet service provider knows or has reason to believe that it infringes copyright in a work must, as soon as possible, give notice to the user that the material has been deleted or access to it prevented.
- (5) Nothing in this section limits the right of the copyright owner to injunctive relief in relation to a user's infringement or any infringement by the Internet service provider.

Section 92C: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 53 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

92D Requirements for notice of infringement

A notice referred to in section 92C(3) must—

- (a) contain the information prescribed by regulations made under this Act; and
- (b) be signed by the copyright owner or the copyright owner's duly authorised agent.

Section 92D: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 53 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

92E Internet service provider does not infringe copyright by caching infringing material

- (1) An Internet service provider does not infringe copyright in a work by caching material if the Internet service provider—
 - (a) does not modify the material; and

- (b) complies with any conditions imposed by the copyright owner of the material for access to that material; and
 - (c) does not interfere with the lawful use of technology to obtain data on the use of the material; and
 - (d) updates the material in accordance with reasonable industry practice.
- (2) However, an Internet service provider does infringe copyright in a work by caching material if the Internet service provider does not delete the material or prevent access to it by users as soon as possible after the Internet service provider became aware that—
- (a) the material has been deleted from its original source; or
 - (b) access to the material at its original source has been prevented; or
 - (c) a court has ordered that the material be deleted from its original source or that access to the material at its original source be prevented.
- (3) Nothing in this section limits the right of the copyright owner to injunctive relief in relation to a user's infringement or any infringement by the Internet service provider.
- (4) In this section,—
- cache** means the storage of material by an Internet service provider that is—
- (a) controlled through an automated process; and
 - (b) temporary; and
 - (c) for the sole purpose of enabling the Internet service provider to transmit the material more efficiently to other users of the service on their request

original source means the source from which the Internet service provider copied the material that is cached.

Section 92E: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 53 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Subsequent dealings

93 Subsequent dealings with copies made under this Part

- (1) Where a copy that would otherwise be an infringing copy—
- (a) is either—

- (i) made in accordance with any of the provisions of this Act referred to in subsection (2); or
 - (ii) made in accordance with any of the provisions of this Act referred to in subsection (2) and, where the provision in accordance with which the copy is made allows the copy to be dealt with, is dealt with; and
- (b) is subsequently dealt with,—
it shall be treated as an infringing copy—
- (c) for the purposes of the dealing referred to in paragraph (b), unless that dealing is an authorised dealing; and
 - (d) for the purposes of any dealing that is subsequent to the dealing referred to in paragraph (b), unless the first-mentioned dealing is an authorised dealing.
- (2) The provisions referred to in subsection (1) are as follows:
- (a) section 43A (which relates to transient reproduction of work):
 - (b) section 44 (which relates to copying for educational purposes of literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works or typographical arrangements):
 - (c) section 44A (which relates to storing for educational purposes):
 - (d) section 45 (which relates to copying for educational purposes of films and sound recordings):
 - (e) section 48 (which relates to recording by educational establishments of communication works):
 - (f) section 49 (which relates to things done for the purposes of an examination):
 - (g) section 51 (which relates to copying by librarians of parts of published works):
 - (h) section 52 (which relates to copying by librarians of articles in periodicals):
 - (i) section 53 (which relates to copying by librarians for users of other libraries):
 - (j) section 55 (which relates to copying by librarians or archivists to replace copies of works):
 - (k) section 56 (which relates to copying by librarians or archivists of certain unpublished works):

- (l) sections 56A to 56C (which relate to access to and copying of works in digital format):
 - (m) section 58 (which relates to copying by the Parliamentary Library for members of Parliament):
 - (n) section 69 (which relates to the provision of Braille copies of literary or dramatic works):
 - (o) section 80A (which relates to the decompilation of computer programs):
 - (p) section 80B (which relates to copying or adapting computer programs if necessary for lawful use):
 - (q) section 81A (which relates to copying sound recordings for private and domestic use):
 - (r) section 83 (which relates to recording for the purposes of complaining):
 - (s) section 84 (which relates to recording for the purposes of time shifting):
 - (t) section 90 (which relates to recording for archival purposes):
 - (u) section 92C (which relates to Internet service provider liability for storing infringing material):
 - (v) section 92E (which relates to Internet service provider liability for caching infringing material).
- (3) In subsection (1), the term **dealt with** means—
- (a) sold or let for hire in the course of a business or otherwise; or
 - (b) offered or exposed for sale or hire in the course of a business.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 32(5), 35(3), 36(5) (UK)
Section 93(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 54 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Part 4 Moral rights

Right to be identified as author or director

94 Right to be identified as author or director

- (1) Subject to section 97,—

- (a) the author of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work that is a copyright work has the right to be identified as the author of the work; and
 - (b) the director of a film that is a copyright work has the right to be identified as the director of the work,—
in the circumstances described in this section, but the right is not infringed unless it has been asserted in accordance with section 96.
- (2) The author of a literary work (other than words intended to be sung or spoken with music) or a dramatic work has the right to be identified as the author of the work whenever—
 - (a) the work is published commercially, performed in public, or communicated to the public; or
 - (b) copies of a film or sound recording including the work are issued to the public.
- (3) The author of—
 - (a) a literary work (other than words intended to be sung or spoken with music); or
 - (b) a dramatic work—
from which an adaptation is made has the right to be identified as the author of the work from which the adaptation is made whenever any of the events described in subsection (2) occurs in relation to the adaptation of the work.
- (4) The author of a musical work, or a literary work consisting of words intended to be sung or spoken with music, has the right to be identified as the author of the work whenever—
 - (a) the work is published commercially; or
 - (b) copies of a sound recording of the work are issued to the public; or
 - (c) a film whose soundtrack includes the work is shown in public; or
 - (d) copies of such a film are issued to the public.
- (5) The author of—
 - (a) a musical work; or
 - (b) a literary work consisting of words intended to be sung or spoken with music—
from which an adaptation is made has the right to be identified as the author of the work from which the adaptation is made

whenever any of the events described in subsection (4) occurs in relation to the adaptation of the work.

- (6) The author of an artistic work has the right to be identified as the author of the work whenever—
- (a) the work is published commercially or exhibited in public; or
 - (b) a visual image of the work is communicated to the public; or
 - (c) a film including a visual image of the work is shown in public; or
 - (d) copies of such a film are issued to the public; or
 - (e) in the case of a sculpture, a work of architecture in the form of a building or a model for a building, or a work of artistic craftsmanship, copies of a graphic work representing the work, or of a photograph of the work, are issued to the public.
- (7) The author of a work of architecture in the form of a building has the right to be identified as such on the building as constructed or, where more than 1 building is constructed to the design, on the first to be constructed.
- (8) The director of a film has the right to be identified as the director of the film whenever—
- (a) the film is shown in public or communicated to the public; or
 - (b) copies of the film are issued to the public.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 77(1)–(6), (9) (UK)

Section 94(2)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 55(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 94(6)(b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 55(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 94(8)(a): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 55(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

95 Content of right to be identified

- (1) The right conferred by section 94 on an author or director is as follows:
- (a) in the case of commercial publication, or the issue to the public of copies of a film or sound recording, to be identified clearly and reasonably prominently—

- (i) in or on each copy published commercially or issued, as the case may be; or
 - (ii) if identification in or on each copy is not appropriate, in some other manner likely to bring his or her identity to the attention of a person acquiring a copy:
 - (b) in the case of identification on a building, to be identified by appropriate means visible to persons entering or approaching the building:
 - (c) in any other case, to be identified clearly and reasonably prominently in a manner likely to bring his or her identity to the attention of a person seeing or hearing the performance, exhibition, showing, communication work, graphic work, or photograph.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), if the author or director, in asserting his or her right to be identified, specifies a pseudonym, initials, or some other particular form of identification, that form shall be used, but, in any other case, any reasonable form of identification may be used.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 77(7), (8) (UK)

Section 95(1)(c): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 56 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

96 Right must be asserted

- (1) A person does not infringe the right conferred by section 94 by failing, in the circumstances described in that section, to identify the author as the author of the work or to identify the director as the director of the work, as the case may be, unless the right has been asserted under this section in such a way as to require that person to so identify the author or director.
- (2) The right may be asserted generally, or in relation to any specified circumstances,—
- (a) on an assignment of copyright in the work, by including in the instrument effecting the assignment a statement that the author or director asserts in relation to that work his or her right to be identified as the author or director, as the case may be; or
 - (b) at any time, by instrument in writing signed by the author or director.

- (3) The right may be asserted in relation to the public exhibition of an artistic work—
- (a) by ensuring that when the author or other first owner of copyright parts with possession of the original, or of a copy made by him or her or under his or her direction or control, the author is identified as the author on the original or copy, or on a frame, mount, or other thing to which it is attached; or
 - (b) by including in any licence by which the author or other first owner of copyright authorises the making of copies of the work a statement signed by or on behalf of the author or other first owner of the copyright that the author asserts his or her right to be identified as the author in the event of the public exhibition of a copy made in pursuance of the licence.
- (4) The persons bound by an assertion of the right under subsection (2) or subsection (3) are,—
- (a) in the case of an assertion under subsection (2)(a), the assignee and anyone claiming through the assignee, whether or not the person claiming through the assignee has notice of the assertion; and
 - (b) in the case of an assertion under subsection (2)(b), anyone to whose notice the assertion is brought; and
 - (c) in the case of an assertion under subsection (3)(a), anyone into whose hands that original or copy comes, whether or not the identification is still present or visible; and
 - (d) in the case of an assertion under subsection (3)(b), the person to whom the licence is granted and any person into whose hands a copy made in pursuance of the licence comes, whether or not the person has notice of the assertion.
- (5) In an action for infringement of the right, the court shall, in considering remedies, take into account any delay in asserting the right.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 78 (UK)

97 Exceptions to right to be identified

- (1) The right conferred by section 94 is subject to the exceptions set out in this section.
- (2) The right does not apply in relation to—
 - (a) a computer program; or
 - (b) a computer-generated work; or
 - (c) the design of a typeface.
- (3) The right is not infringed by an act that, under any of the following provisions of this Act, would not infringe copyright in the work:
 - (a) section 41 (which relates to incidental copying of a work);
 - (b) section 42 (which relates to criticism, review, and news reporting);
 - (c) section 43A (which relates to transient reproduction of work);
 - (d) section 49 (which relates to things done for the purposes of an examination);
 - (e) section 59 (which relates to parliamentary and judicial proceedings);
 - (f) section 60 (which relates to Royal commissions and statutory inquiries);
 - (g) section 67 (which relates to acts permitted on assumptions as to expiry of copyright or death of author in relation to anonymous or pseudonymous works);
 - (h) section 81A (which relates to copying sound recordings for private and domestic use).
- (4) The right does not apply in relation to any work made for the purpose of reporting current events.
- (5) The right does not apply in relation to the publication, in—
 - (a) a newspaper, magazine, or similar periodical; or
 - (b) an encyclopedia, dictionary, yearbook, or other collective work of reference,—of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work made for the purposes of such publication or made available with the consent of the author for the purposes of such publication.
- (6) The right does not apply to any act done by or with the licence of the copyright owner in relation to a work in which copyright

first vested in the author's employer under section 21(2) or in the director's employer under section 5(2)(b), if—

- (a) the author or director cannot readily be identified at the time of the act; or
 - (b) in the case of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work—
 - (i) more than 2 persons were involved in the creation of the work and it is impracticable at the time of the act to identify the respective contributions of each person to the work; and
 - (ii) the authors have not previously been identified in or on published copies of the work.
- (7) The right does not apply in relation to—
- (a) a work in which Crown copyright exists under section 26; or
 - (b) a work in which copyright first vested in an international organisation under section 28,—
- unless the author or director has previously been identified as such in or on published copies of the work.
- (8) The right does not apply in relation to—
- (a) a film that is an advertisement; or
 - (b) a part of a film, if that part—
 - (i) appears incidentally in another film, or is included in a communication work; and
 - (ii) is not a substantial part of the film.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 79 (UK)

Section 97(3): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 57(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 97(8)(b): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 57(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Right to object to derogatory treatment of work

98 Right to object to derogatory treatment of work

- (1) For the purposes of this section and section 99,—
- (a) the term **treatment** of a work means any addition to, deletion from, alteration to, or adaptation of the work, other than—
 - (i) a translation of a literary or dramatic work; or

- (ii) an arrangement or transcription of a musical work involving no more than a change of key or register; and
- (b) the treatment of a work is derogatory if, whether by distortion or mutilation of the work or otherwise, the treatment is prejudicial to the honour or reputation of the author or director;—

and in the following provisions of this section any reference to a **derogatory treatment** of a work shall be construed accordingly.

- (2) Subject to section 100 and 101,—
 - (a) the author of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work that is a copyright work; and
 - (b) the director of a film that is a copyright work—has the right not to have his or her work subjected to a derogatory treatment.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 80(1), (2), (8) (UK)

99 Content of right to object to derogatory treatment

- (1) In the case of a literary, dramatic, or musical work, the right conferred by section 98(2) is infringed by a person who—
 - (a) publishes commercially, performs in public, or communicates to the public a derogatory treatment of the work; or
 - (b) issues to the public copies of—
 - (i) a film or sound recording of; or
 - (ii) a film or sound recording that includes—a derogatory treatment of the work.
- (2) In the case of an artistic work, the right conferred by section 98(2) is infringed by a person who—
 - (a) publishes commercially or exhibits in public a derogatory treatment of the work, or communicates to the public a visual image of a derogatory treatment of the work; or
 - (b) shows in public a film that includes a visual image of a derogatory treatment of the work or issues to the public copies of such a film; or
 - (c) in the case of—
 - (i) a sculpture; or

- (ii) a work of architecture in the form of a model for a building; or
 - (iii) a work of artistic craftsmanship,—
issues to the public copies of a graphic work representing, or of a photograph of, a derogatory treatment of the work.
- (3) Subsection (2) does not apply to a work of architecture in the form of a building; but where the author of such a work is identified on the building and it is the subject of derogatory treatment the author has the right to require the identification to be removed.
- (4) In the case of a film, the right conferred by section 98(2) is infringed by a person who—
 - (a) shows in public, or communicates to the public, a derogatory treatment of the film; or
 - (b) issues to the public copies of a derogatory treatment of the film; or
 - (c) along with the film,—
 - (i) plays in public or communicates to the public; or
 - (ii) issues to the public copies of—
a derogatory treatment of the film soundtrack.
- (5) The right conferred by section 98(2) extends to the treatment of parts of a work resulting from a previous treatment by a person other than the author or director of the work, if those parts are attributed to, or are likely to be regarded as the work of, the author or director.
- (6) The right conferred by section 98(2) is infringed by a person who, in the course of a business,—
 - (a) possesses; or
 - (b) sells or lets for hire; or
 - (c) offers or exposes for sale or hire; or
 - (d) exhibits in public or distributes—
an object that is, and that the person knows or has reason to believe is, a work or a copy of a work that—
 - (e) has been subjected to derogatory treatment; and
 - (f) has been, or is likely to be, the subject of any of the acts described in this section in circumstances infringing the right conferred by section 98(2).

- (7) The right conferred by section 98(2) is infringed by a person who does an act described in subsection (1) or subsection (2) or subsection (4) or subsection (6) or who authorises another person to do such an act.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 80(3)–(7), 83 (UK)

Section 99(1)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 58(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 99(2)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 58(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 99(4)(a): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 58(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 99(4)(c)(i): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 58(4) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

100 Exceptions to right to object to derogatory treatment of literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work

- (1) The right conferred by section 98(2) is, in relation to literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works, subject to the exceptions set out in this section.
- (2) The right does not apply to—
- a computer program; or
 - a computer-generated work; or
 - the design of a typeface.
- (3) The right does not apply in relation to the publication, in—
- a newspaper, magazine, or similar periodical; or
 - an encyclopaedia, dictionary, yearbook, or other collective work of reference,—
- of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work made for the purposes of such publication or made available with the consent of the author for the purposes of such publication.
- (4) The right does not apply in relation to any subsequent exploitation elsewhere, without any modification of the published version, of a work to which subsection (3) applies.
- (5) The right is not infringed by an act that, under section 67, would not infringe copyright.
- (6) The right does not apply in relation to any work made for the purpose of reporting current events.
- (7) The right is not infringed by any act done for the purpose of—
- avoiding the commission of an offence; or

- (b) complying with a duty imposed by or under any enactment—
if,—
 - (c) where the author is identified at the time of the act, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act and appearing with the identification, that the work has been subjected to treatment to which the author has not consented; or
 - (d) where the author has previously been identified in or on published copies of the work, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act, that the work has been subjected to treatment to which the author has not consented.
- (8) The right does not apply to any act done, by or with the licence of the copyright owner, in relation to—
- (a) a work in which copyright first vested in the author's employer under section 21(2); or
 - (b) a work in which Crown copyright exists under section 26; or
 - (c) a work in which copyright first vested in an international organisation under section 28—
unless the author—
 - (d) is identified at the time of the act; or
 - (e) has previously been identified in or on published copies of the work.
- (9) Where the right applies under subsection (8), the right is not infringed if,—
- (a) where the author is identified at the time of the act, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act and appearing with the identification, that the work has been subjected to treatment to which the author has not consented; or
 - (b) where the author has previously been identified in or on published copies of the work, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act, that the work has been subjected to treatment to which the author has not consented.

101 Exceptions to right to object to derogatory treatment of films

- (1) The right conferred by section 98(2) is, in relation to films, subject to the exceptions set out in this section.
- (2) The right does not apply in relation to any film made for the purpose of reporting current events.
- (3) The right is not infringed by any act done for the purpose of,—
 - (a) in relation to the communication of a film,—
 - (i) complying with a duty imposed under section 4 of the Broadcasting Act 1989; or
 - (ii) maintaining standards that are consistent with the observance of good taste and decency and the maintenance of law and order; or
 - (iii) avoiding the commission of an offence; or
 - (iv) complying with a duty imposed by or under any enactment—
 - (b) *[Repealed]*if,—
 - (c) where the director is identified at the time of the act, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act and appearing with the identification, that the film has been subjected to treatment to which the director has not consented; or
 - (d) where the director has previously been identified in or on published copies of the work, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act, that the film has been subjected to treatment to which the director has not consented.
- (4) The right does not apply to any act done, by or with the licence of the copyright owner, in relation to—
 - (a) a film in which copyright first vested in the director's employer under section 5(2)(b); or
 - (b) a film in which Crown copyright exists under section 26; or
 - (c) a film in which copyright first vested in an international organisation under section 28—unless the director—
 - (d) is identified at the time of the act; or

- (e) has previously been identified in or on published copies of the film.
- (5) Where the right applies under subsection (4), the right is not infringed if,—
- (a) where the director is identified at the time of the act, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act and appearing with the identification, that the film has been subjected to treatment to which the director has not consented; or
 - (b) where the director has previously been identified in or on published copies of the work, there is a clear and reasonably prominent indication, given at the time of the act, that the film has been subjected to treatment to which the director has not consented.
- (6) The right is not infringed, in relation to the communication of a film to the public, if the person (A) communicating the film—
- (a) makes a deletion or any deletions from the film that is or are reasonably required to enable A to—
 - (i) follow guidelines as to the programmes that may be shown in particular time periods; or
 - (ii) fit the film into the time scheduled to show it; or
 - (b) communicates the film in separate parts because of its length; or
 - (c) uses a clip of a film in an advertisement for the showing of the film.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 81, 82 (UK)

Section 101(3)(a): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 59(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 101(3)(b): repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 59(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 101(6): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 59(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

False attribution

102 False attribution of identity of author or director

- (1) In this section, the term **attribution**, in relation to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or a film, means an express or implied statement as to the identity of the author of the work or the director of the film.

- (2) A person has the right—
 - (a) not to have a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work falsely attributed to him or her as author; and
 - (b) not to have a film falsely attributed to him or her as director.
- (3) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who—
 - (a) issues to the public copies of—
 - (i) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work; or
 - (ii) a film—
in or on which there is a false attribution; or
 - (b) exhibits in public—
 - (i) an artistic work; or
 - (ii) a copy of an artistic work,—
in or on which there is a false attribution,—
knowing, or having reason to believe, that the attribution is false.
- (4) A person (A) infringes a right under subsection (2) if—
 - (a) A performs a literary, dramatic, or musical work in public, or shows a film to the public, or communicates the work or film to the public; and
 - (b) the work or film is accompanied by a false attribution; and
 - (c) A knows or has reason to believe that the attribution is false.
- (5) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by—
 - (a) the issue to the public; or
 - (b) the public display—
of material containing a false attribution in connection with any of the acts referred to in subsection (3) or subsection (4).
- (6) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who, in the course of a business,—
 - (a) possesses a copy of—
 - (i) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work; or
 - (ii) a film—
in or on which there is a false attribution; or
 - (b) sells or lets for hire, offers or exposes for sale or hire, exhibits in public, or distributes a copy of—
 - (i) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work; or

- (ii) a film—
in or on which there is a false attribution; or
 - (c) in the case of an artistic work, possesses the work when there is a false attribution in or on the work; or
 - (d) sells, or lets for hire, offers or exposes for sale or hire, distributes, or exhibits in public an artistic work in or on which there is a false attribution,—
knowing, or having reason to believe, that there is such an attribution and that the attribution is false.
- (7) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who does an act described in this section or who authorises another person to do such an act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 62(1), (2); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 84(1)–(5), (7) (UK)

Section 102(4): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 60 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

103 False representation as to literary, dramatic, or musical work

- (1) In this section, the term **representation**, in relation to a literary, dramatic, or musical work, means an express or implied statement as to the work being an adaptation of a work by a particular author.
- (2) A person has the right not to have a literary, dramatic, or musical work falsely represented as being an adaptation of a work of which the person is the author.
- (3) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who issues to the public copies of a literary, dramatic, or musical work in or on which there is a false representation, knowing or having reason to believe that the representation is false.
- (4) A person (A) infringes the right conferred by subsection (2) if A performs in public, or communicates to the public, a literary, dramatic, or musical work, accompanied by a false representation, and A knows or has reason to believe that the representation is false.
- (5) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by—
 - (a) the issue to the public; or
 - (b) the public display—

of material containing a false representation in connection with any of the acts mentioned in subsection (3) or subsection (4).

- (6) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who, in the course of a business,—
- (a) possesses a copy of a literary, dramatic, or musical work in or on which there is a false representation; or
 - (b) sells or lets for hire, offers or exposes for sale or hire, distributes, or exhibits in public a copy of a literary, dramatic, or musical work in or on which there is a false representation,—
- knowing, or having reason to believe, that there is such a representation and that the representation is false.
- (7) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who does an act described in this section or who authorises another person to do such an act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 62(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 84(8)(a) (UK)

Section 103(4): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 61 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

104 False representations as to artistic work

- (1) In this section, the term **representation** means an express or implied statement as to a matter referred to in paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) or paragraph (c) of subsection (2).
- (2) The author of an artistic work has the right—
- (a) not to have the work falsely represented as the unaltered work of the author if the work has been altered after the author parted with possession of the work; and
 - (b) not to have a copy of a work that has been altered after the author parted with possession of the work falsely represented as a copy of an unaltered work of the author; and
 - (c) not to have a copy of an artistic work falsely represented as being a copy made by the author of the artistic work.
- (3) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who exhibits in public an artistic work, or a copy of an artistic work, as the case may be, in or on which there is a false

representation, knowing or having reason to believe that the representation is false.

- (4) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by—
- (a) the issue to the public; or
 - (b) the public display—
- of material containing a false representation in connection with any act referred to in subsection (3).
- (5) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who, in the course of a business,—
- (a) possesses an artistic work or a copy of an artistic work, as the case may be, in or on which there is a false representation or when there is a false representation in or on the work or copy; or
 - (b) sells or lets for hire, offers or exposes for sale or hire, distributes, or exhibits in public an artistic work or a copy of an artistic work, as the case may be, in or on which there is a false representation or when there is a false representation in or on the work or copy,—
- knowing or having reason to believe there is such a representation and that the representation is false.
- (6) The right conferred by subsection (2) is infringed by a person who does an act described in this section or who authorises another person to do such an act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 62(4), (6); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 84(6), (8)(b) (UK)

Right to privacy of certain photographs and films

105 Right to privacy of certain photographs and films

- (1) A person who, for private and domestic purposes, commissions the taking of a photograph or the making of a film has, where copyright exists in the resulting work but is owned by some other person, the right—
- (a) not to have copies of the work issued to the public; and
 - (b) not to have the work exhibited or shown in public; and
 - (c) not to have the work communicated to the public.
- (2) Subject to subsection (3), the right conferred by subsection (1) is infringed by a person who does an act of the kind described

- in paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) or paragraph (c) of subsection (1).
- (3) The right conferred by subsection (1) is not infringed by an act that, under any of the following provisions of this Act, would not infringe copyright in the work:
- (a) section 41 (which relates to the incidental copying of a work in an artistic work, film, or communication work):
 - (b) section 59 (which relates to parliamentary and judicial proceedings):
 - (c) section 60 (which relates to Royal commissions and statutory inquiries):
 - (d) section 66 (which relates to acts done under statutory authority):
 - (e) section 67 (which relates to acts permitted on assumptions as to expiry of copyright or death of the author in relation to anonymous or pseudonymous works).
- (4) The right conferred by subsection (1) is infringed by a person who does an act described in subsection (2) or who authorises another person to do such an act.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 85 (UK)

Section 105(1)(c): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 62(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 105(3)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 62(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Supplementary provisions

106 Duration of rights

- (1) The rights conferred by the following provisions of this Act expire when the copyright in any work that is the subject of the right expires:
- (a) section 94 (which relates to the right to be identified as author or director):
 - (b) section 98 (which relates to the right to object to derogatory treatment of a work):
 - (c) section 105 (which relates to the right to privacy of certain photographs and films).
- (2) The rights conferred by the following provisions of this Act expire at the end of the period of 20 years from the end of the

calendar year in which the person who is entitled to the right dies:

- (a) section 102 (which relates to false attribution of the identity of an author or director):
- (b) section 103 (which relates to a false representation as to literary, dramatic, or musical works):
- (c) section 104 (which relates to false representations as to artistic works).

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 62(5); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 86 (UK)

107 Consent and waiver of rights

- (1) It is not an infringement of any of the rights conferred by this Part to do any act to which the person who is entitled to the right has consented.
- (2) Any of the rights conferred by this Part may be waived by instrument in writing signed by the person waiving the right.
- (3) A waiver given pursuant to subsection (2)—
 - (a) may relate to a specific work, or to works of a specified description that are in existence, in progress, or about to be commenced; and
 - (b) shall state the rights to which the waiver relates; and
 - (c) may be expressed to be subject to revocation; and
 - (d) if made in favour of the owner or prospective owner of the copyright in the work or works to which the waiver relates, shall be presumed to extend to his or her licensees and successors in title unless a contrary intention is expressed.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 87 (UK)

108 Application of provisions to joint works other than films

- (1) This section does not apply to a film.
- (2) A consent or waiver under section 107 by one joint author does not affect the rights of the other joint authors.
- (3) The right conferred by section 94 is, in the case of a work of joint authorship, a right of each joint author to be identified as a joint author, and must be asserted in accordance with section 96 by each joint author in relation to himself or herself.

- (4) The right conferred by section 98 is, in the case of a work of joint authorship, a right of each joint author.
- (5) The right conferred by section 102 is infringed, in the circumstances described in that section,—
 - (a) by any false statement as to the authorship of a work of joint authorship; and
 - (b) by the false attribution of joint authorship in relation to a work of sole authorship;—and such a false attribution infringes the right of every person to whom authorship of any description is, whether rightly or wrongly, attributed.
- (6) The right conferred by section 103 is infringed, in the circumstances described in that section, by any false representation as to an adaptation of a work of joint authorship, and such a false representation infringes the right of each joint author.
- (7) The right conferred by section 104 is infringed, in the circumstances described in that section, by any false representation as to a matter referred to in paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) or paragraph (c) of subsection (2) of that section, and such a false representation infringes the right of each joint author.
- (8) The right conferred by section 105 is, in the case of a photograph made in pursuance of a joint commission, a right of each person who commissioned the taking of the photograph, so that—
 - (a) the right of each person is satisfied if he or she consents to the act in question; and
 - (b) a waiver under section 107 by one person does not affect the rights of the other persons.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 88(1)–(4), (6) (UK)

109 Application of provisions to joint works that are films

- (1) Where a film was, or is alleged to have been, jointly directed,—
 - (a) a consent or waiver under section 107 by one joint director does not affect the rights of the other joint directors; and
 - (b) the right conferred by section 94 is a right of each joint director to be identified as a joint director, and must

- be asserted in accordance with section 96 by each joint director in relation to himself or herself; and
- (c) the right conferred by section 98 is a right of each joint director; and
 - (d) the right conferred by section 102 is infringed, in the circumstances described in that section,—
 - (i) by any false statement as to the directorship of the film; or
 - (ii) by the false attribution of joint directorship in relation to a film of sole directorship;—and such a false attribution infringes the right of every person to whom directorship of any description is, whether rightly or wrongly, attributed.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), a film is **jointly directed** if the film is made by the collaboration of 2 or more directors and the contribution of each director is not distinct from that of the other director or directors.
- (3) The right conferred by section 105 is, in the case of a film made in pursuance of a joint commission, a right of each person who commissioned the making of the film, so that—
- (a) the right of each person is satisfied if he or she consents to the act in question; and
 - (b) a waiver under section 107 by one person does not affect the rights of the other persons.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 88(5) (UK)

110 Application of provisions to parts of works

- (1) The rights conferred by section 94 or section 105 apply in relation to the whole or any substantial part of a work.
- (2) The rights conferred by the following provisions of this Act apply in relation to the whole or any part of a work:
- (a) section 98 (which relates to the right to object to derogatory treatment of a work):
 - (b) section 102 (which relates to false attribution of the identity of an author or director):
 - (c) section 103 (which relates to a false representation as to literary, dramatic, or musical works):

- (d) section 104 (which relates to false representations as to artistic works).

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 89 (UK)

Part 5

Dealing with rights in copyright works

Licences to deal with copyright works

111 Licences

- (1) A licence granted by a copyright owner is binding on every successor in title to that person's interest in the copyright, except a purchaser in good faith for valuable consideration and without notice (actual or constructive) of the licence or a person deriving title from such a purchaser; and references in this Act to doing anything—
- (a) with, or without, the licence of the copyright owner; or
- (b) other than pursuant to a copyright licence—
- shall be construed accordingly.
- (2) The licensee under an exclusive licence has the same rights against a successor in title who is bound by the licence as that licensee has against the copyright owner.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 56(4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 ss 90(4), 92(2) (UK)

112 Warranty implied in certain licences

- (1) This section applies to a licence that has been granted for—
- (a) the performance or communication to the public of a copyright work that is a literary, dramatic, or musical work or a sound recording or film; or
- (b) the inclusion of a copyright work that is an artistic work in a performance or a communication work.
- (2) A warranty is implied in the licence that the person by whom or on whose behalf the licence is granted is—
- (a) the owner of the copyright in the work, sound recording, or film that is the subject of the licence; or
- (b) authorised to grant the licence by the copyright owner.

Section 112: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 63 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

112A Damages for falsely claiming copyright ownership or licence

- (1) This section applies if—
- (a) a person (A) falsely claims to be, or to have been granted a licence by or on behalf of, the owner of the copyright in a literary, dramatic, musical, or an artistic work or a sound recording or film; and
 - (b) A has threatened or commenced proceedings for preventing, or claiming damages in respect of, a performance or communication to the public of the work, sound recording, or film (which in this section is called the **event**); and
 - (c) as a result of the threat or commencement of proceedings, the event has not taken place.
- (2) A court may award damages to compensate any of the following persons for any loss sustained because the event did not take place:
- (a) in the case of a threat of proceedings, the person to whom A made the threat:
 - (b) in the case of the commencement of proceedings, a defendant:
 - (c) any other person interested in the event.

Section 112A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 63 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

112B Provisions of sections 112 and 112A to have effect no matter what licence says

The provisions of sections 112 and 112A have effect no matter what any licence may say, and extend to all licences whether granted before or after the commencement of this Act.

Section 112B: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 63 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

*Transmission of copyright***113 Transmission of copyright**

- (1) Copyright is transmissible, as personal or moveable property, by—
- (a) assignment; or
 - (b) testamentary disposition; or

- (c) operation of law.
- (2) A transmission of copyright may be partial, that is, limited so as to apply—
 - (a) to 1 or more, but not all, of the things the copyright owner has the exclusive right to do:
 - (b) to part, but not the whole, of the period for which the copyright is to exist.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 56(1), (2); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 90(1), (2) (UK)

114 Assignment

An assignment of copyright is not effective unless it is in writing signed by or on behalf of the assignor.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 56(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 90(3) (UK)

115 Copyright to pass under will with unpublished works

Where under a bequest (whether specific or general) a person is entitled, beneficially or otherwise, to—

- (a) an original document or other material thing recording or embodying a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work that was not published before the death of the testator; or
- (b) an original material thing containing a sound recording or film that was not published before the death of the testator,—

the bequest shall, unless a contrary intention is indicated in the testator's will or a codicil to that will, be construed as including the copyright in the work in so far as the testator was the copyright owner immediately before his or her death.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 59; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 93 (UK)

116 Future copyright

- (1) Future copyright shall be capable of being assigned, wholly or partially, in the same manner and in all respects as if the copyright were then in existence, and on coming into existence the copyright shall vest in the assignee or the assignee's successor in title accordingly.

- (2) Sections 111(1), 113(2), and 114 apply to future copyright in the same manner as they apply to existing copyright.
- (3) A licence granted by a person to whom future copyright has been assigned is binding on every successor in title to that person's interest in the copyright, except a purchaser in good faith for valuable consideration and without notice (actual or constructive) of the licence or a person deriving title from such a purchaser; and references in this Act to doing anything—
 - (a) with, or without, the licence of the copyright owner; or
 - (b) other than pursuant to a copyright licence—shall be construed accordingly.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 57; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 91 (UK)

117 Right to make conditions in respect of certain unpublished works

- (1) This section applies where the owner of the copyright in an unpublished literary, dramatic, or musical work, or an unpublished artistic work other than a photograph, has, whether before or after the commencement of this Act, transferred or bequeathed to an institution—
 - (a) the property in or possession of the manuscript of the literary, dramatic, or musical work or a copy of the manuscript; or
 - (b) the property in or possession of the artistic work,—subject to any conditions prohibiting, restricting, or regulating publication of the work for a specified period or without any limit on the period.
- (2) While the manuscript, copy, or work is in the possession of the institution, any publication of the work in breach of such a condition by—
 - (a) the institution owning the manuscript, copy, or work; or
 - (b) the institution having possession of the manuscript, copy, or work; or
 - (c) any other person—shall, notwithstanding that the copyright in the work may have expired, be actionable as if copyright continued to exist in the work and the publication were an infringement of the copyright.

- (3) Nothing in this section applies to any publication with the consent of the person who would be the owner of the copyright in the work if the copyright had not expired.
- (4) In this section, the term **institution** means the Crown, a local body, a prescribed library or archive within the meaning of section 50, an institution within the meaning of section 159 of the Education Act 1989, or any other institution prescribed by regulations made under this Act.
Compare: 1962 No 33 s 58

Moral rights

118 Moral rights not assignable

The rights conferred by Part 4 are not assignable.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 94 (UK)

119 Transmission of moral rights on death

- (1) On the death of a person entitled to the right conferred by section 94 or section 98 or section 105,—
 - (a) the right passes to such person as he or she may by testamentary disposition specifically direct; or
 - (b) if there is no such direction but the copyright in the work in question forms part of the estate, the right passes to the person to whom the copyright passes; or
 - (c) if or to the extent that the right does not pass under paragraph (a) or paragraph (b), the right is exercisable by the personal representatives.
- (2) Where—
 - (a) under subsection (1)(b) any right passes to the person to whom the copyright passes; and
 - (b) the copyright passes in part to one person and in part to another,—the right shall pass in the same manner as the copyright.
- (3) Where under paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) of subsection (1) a right becomes exercisable by more than 1 person,—
 - (a) in the case of the right conferred by section 94, the right may be asserted by any of those persons; and
 - (b) in the case of the right conferred by section 98 or section 105, the right is exercisable by each of those persons and

- is satisfied in relation to any of those persons if one of them consents to the treatment or act in question; and
- (c) any waiver of the right in accordance with section 107 by one of those persons does not affect the rights of the others.
- (4) A consent or waiver previously given or made binds any person to whom a right passes under subsection (1).
- (5) Any infringement after a person's death of the right conferred by section 102 or section 103 or section 104 is actionable by his or her personal representatives.
- (6) Any damages recovered by personal representatives in respect of an infringement after the death of a person entitled to a right conferred by Part 4 shall devolve as part of the estate as if the right of action had existed and been vested in the person immediately before his or her death.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 95 (UK)

Part 6 Remedies for infringement

Rights and remedies of copyright owner

120 Infringement actionable by copyright owner

- (1) An infringement of copyright is actionable by the copyright owner.
- (2) In proceedings for infringement of copyright, all such relief by way of damages, injunctions, accounts, or otherwise is available to the plaintiff as is available in respect of the infringement of any other property right.
- (3) This section has effect subject to the following provisions of this Part.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 24(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 96 (UK)

121 Provisions as to damages in infringement proceedings

- (1) Where, in proceedings for infringement of copyright, it is proved or admitted that at the time of the infringement the defendant did not know, and had no reason to believe, that copyright existed in the work to which the proceedings relate, the plaintiff is not entitled to damages but, without prejudice

to the award of any other remedy, is entitled to an account of profits.

- (2) In proceedings for infringement of copyright, the court may, having regard to all the circumstances and in particular to—
 - (a) the flagrancy of the infringement; and
 - (b) any benefit accruing to the defendant by reason of the infringement,—award such additional damages as the justice of the case may require.
- (3) In proceedings for infringement of copyright in respect of the construction of a building, no injunction or other order shall be made—
 - (a) after the construction of the building has been begun, so as to prevent the building from being completed; or
 - (b) so as to require the building, in so far as it has been constructed, to be demolished.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 24(2)–(4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 97 (UK)

122 Order for delivery up in civil proceedings

- (1) Where a person—
 - (a) has an infringing copy of a work in that person's possession, custody, or control in the course of a business; or
 - (b) has in that person's possession, custody, or control an object specifically designed or adapted for making copies of a particular copyright work, knowing or having reason to believe that the object has been or is to be used to make infringing copies,—the owner of the copyright in the work may apply to the court for an order that the infringing copy or object be delivered up to the copyright owner or such other person as the court may direct.
- (2) No order shall be made unless the court also makes, or it appears to the court that there are grounds for making, an order under section 134.
- (3) A person to whom an infringing copy or other object is delivered up in pursuance of an order under this section shall, if an order under section 134 is not made, retain the copy or object

pending the making of an order, or the decision not to make an order, under that section.

- (4) Notwithstanding any rule of court, an order may be made pursuant to this section on an *ex parte* application by the copyright owner where service of notice of the application would cause undue delay or other serious detriment to the copyright owner.
- (5) Nothing in this section affects any other power of the court.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 99 (UK)

Rights and remedies of exclusive licensee

123 Rights and remedies of exclusive licensee

- (1) An exclusive licensee has, except against the copyright owner, the same rights and remedies under sections 120, 121, and 122 in respect of matters occurring after the grant of the licence as if the licence were an assignment.
- (2) The rights and remedies of the exclusive licensee under sections 120, 121, and 122 are concurrent with those of the copyright owner.
- (3) In proceedings brought by an exclusive licensee pursuant to this section, a defendant may avail himself or herself or itself of any defence that would have been available if the proceedings had been brought by the copyright owner.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 26(2)(a), (b), (4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 101 (UK)

124 Exercise of concurrent rights

- (1) Where proceedings for infringement of copyright brought by the copyright owner or an exclusive licensee relate (wholly or partly) to an infringement in respect of which the copyright owner and the exclusive licensee have concurrent rights of action, the copyright owner or, as the case may be, the exclusive licensee may not, without the leave of the court, proceed unless the other is either joined as a plaintiff or added as a defendant.
- (2) A copyright owner or exclusive licensee who is joined as a plaintiff or added as a defendant pursuant to subsection (1) is not liable for any costs in the proceedings unless that person takes part in the proceedings.

- (3) Subsections (1) and (2) do not affect the granting of interlocutory relief on an application by a copyright owner or exclusive licensee alone.
- (4) Whether or not the copyright owner and the exclusive licensee are both parties to proceedings for infringement of copyright that relate (wholly or partly) to an infringement in respect of which they have or had concurrent rights of action,—
 - (a) the court shall, in assessing damages, take into account—
 - (i) the terms of the licence; and
 - (ii) any pecuniary remedy already awarded or available to either the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee in respect of the infringement; and
 - (b) no account of profits shall be directed if an award of damages has been made, or an account of profits has been directed, in favour of either the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee in respect of the infringement; and
 - (c) the court shall, if an account of profits is directed, apportion the profits between the copyright owner and the exclusive licensee in such manner as the court considers just, subject to any agreement between them.
- (5) The copyright owner shall notify any exclusive licensee having concurrent rights before applying for an order under section 122; and the court may on the application of the licensee make such order under that section as it thinks fit having regard to the terms of the licence.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 26(3)–(8); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 102 (UK)

Rights and remedies in relation to moral rights

125 Infringement of moral rights actionable

- (1) An infringement of a right conferred by Part 4 is actionable by the person entitled to the right.
- (2) In proceedings for infringement of a right conferred by Part 4, relief by way of damages and injunction is available to the plaintiff.

- (3) In proceedings for infringement of the right conferred by section 98(2), the court may, if it thinks it is an adequate remedy in the circumstances, grant an injunction on terms prohibiting the doing of any act unless a disclaimer is made, in such terms and in such manner as may be approved by the court, dissociating the author or director from the treatment of the work.
- Compare: 1962 No 33 s 62(8); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 103 (UK)

Presumptions

126 Presumptions relevant to literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works

- (1) The presumptions set out in subsections (2) to (5) apply in proceedings brought under this Act with respect to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work.
- (2) Where a name purporting to be that of the author appeared on copies of a literary, dramatic, or musical work as published or on an artistic work when it was made, the person whose name appeared shall be presumed, until the contrary is proved,—
- (a) to be the author of the work; and
 - (b) to have made the work in circumstances not falling within subsections (2) and (3) of section 21, or section 26, or section 28.
- (3) In the case of a work alleged to be a work of joint authorship, subsection (2) applies in relation to each person alleged to be one of the authors.
- (4) Where no name purporting to be that of the author appeared on copies of the work as published or on the work when it was made, but—
- (a) the work qualifies for copyright under section 19; and
 - (b) a name purporting to be that of the publisher appeared on copies of the work as first published,—
- the person whose name appeared shall be presumed, until the contrary is proved, to represent the author and shall be entitled to protect and enforce the author's rights.
- (5) If the author of the work is dead or the identity of the author cannot be ascertained by reasonable inquiry, it shall be presumed, until the contrary is proved,—

- (a) that the work is an original work; and
- (b) that the plaintiff's allegations as to what was the first publication of the work and as to the country of first publication are correct.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 27(2)–(5); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 104 (UK)

127 Presumptions relevant to certain artistic works

- (1) This section applies to any proceedings for infringement of copyright in any artistic work of which copies in 3 dimensions have been issued to the public by or with the licence of the owner of the copyright in that artistic work.
- (2) In any proceedings to which this section applies, where copies as issued to the public, whether in New Zealand or in any other country, bear a clear and legible label or other mark indicating the following claims, namely,—
 - (a) that copyright existed in the artistic work of which the copy was made; and
 - (b) that a named person was the owner of the copyright in the artistic work at the time the copy was issued to the public; and
 - (c) that a named person was the exclusive licensee of the copyright owner at the time the copy was issued to the public; and
 - (d) that the copy was first issued to the public in a specified year,—
it shall be presumed until the contrary is proved—
 - (e) that at all material times the defendant had knowledge of each of the claims specified in paragraphs (a) to (d); and
 - (f) that the copy was first made available to the public in the year specified.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (2), the symbol “©” on a label or other mark shall be taken to indicate that copyright is claimed to exist in the artistic work of which the copy so labelled or marked is made.
- (4) Nothing in this section limits or affects section 126.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 27A; 1985 No 134 s 7(1)

128 Presumptions relevant to computer programs, sound recordings, and films

- (1) In proceedings brought under this Act with respect to a computer program, where copies of the program are issued to the public in electronic form bearing a statement—
 - (a) that a named person was the owner of copyright in the program at the date of the issue of the copies in electronic form; or
 - (b) that copies of the program were first issued to the public in electronic form in a specified year or that the program was first published in a specified country,—the statement shall be admissible as evidence of the facts stated and shall be presumed to be correct until the contrary is proved.
- (2) In proceedings brought under this Act with respect to a sound recording, where copies of the recording as issued to the public bear a label or other mark stating—
 - (a) that a named person was the owner of copyright in the recording at the date of the issue of the copies; or
 - (b) that the recording was first published in a specified year or in a specified country,—the label or mark shall be admissible as evidence of the facts stated and shall be presumed to be correct until the contrary is proved.
- (3) In proceedings brought under this Act with respect to a film, where copies of the film as issued to the public bear a statement—
 - (a) that a named person was the author or director of the film; or
 - (b) that a named person was the owner of copyright in the film at the date of the issue of the copies; or
 - (c) that the film was first published in a specified year or in a specified country,—the statement shall be admissible as evidence of the facts stated and shall be presumed to be correct until the contrary is proved.
- (4) The presumptions created in subsections (1) to (3) apply in proceedings relating to an infringement alleged to have occurred before the date on which the copies were issued to the public in the same manner as they apply in proceedings relat-

ing to an infringement alleged to have occurred after the date on which the copies were issued to the public.

- (5) In proceedings brought under this Act with respect to a film, where the film as shown in public or communicated to the public bears a statement—
- (a) that a named person was the author or director of the film; or
 - (b) that a named person was the owner of copyright in the film immediately after it was made,—

the statement shall be admissible as evidence of the facts stated and shall be presumed to be correct until the contrary is proved.

- (6) The presumption created by subsection (5) applies in proceedings relating to an infringement alleged to have occurred before the date on which the film was shown in public or communicated to the public in the same manner as it applies in proceedings relating to an infringement alleged to have occurred after the date on which the film was shown in public or communicated to the public.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 27(7); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 105 (UK)

Section 128(5): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 64(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 128(6): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 64(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

129 Presumptions relevant to works subject to Crown copyright

In proceedings brought under this Act with respect to a literary, dramatic, or musical work in which Crown copyright exists, where there appears on printed copies of the work a statement of the year in which the work was first published commercially, that statement shall be admissible as evidence of the fact stated and shall be presumed to be correct until the contrary is proved.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 106 (UK)

130 Unjustified proceedings

- (1) Where a person brings proceedings alleging an infringement of copyright or a contravention of section 226A, a court may,

on the application of any person against whom the proceedings are brought,—

- (a) make a declaration that the bringing of proceedings was unjustified;
 - (b) make an order for the payment of damages for any loss suffered by the person against whom the proceedings are brought.
- (2) A court shall not grant relief under this section if the person who brought the proceedings proves that the acts in respect of which proceedings were brought constituted, or would have constituted if they had been done, an infringement of the copyright concerned.
- (3) Nothing in this section makes a barrister or solicitor of the High Court of New Zealand liable to any proceedings under this section in respect of any act done in his or her professional capacity on behalf of a client.

Compare: 1994 No 116 s 40; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 253 (UK)

Section 130(1): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 65 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Offences

131 Criminal liability for making or dealing with infringing objects

- (1) Every person commits an offence against this section who, other than pursuant to a copyright licence,—
- (a) makes for sale or hire; or
 - (b) imports into New Zealand otherwise than for that person's private and domestic use; or
 - (c) possesses in the course of a business with a view to committing any act infringing the copyright; or
 - (d) in the course of a business,—
 - (i) offers or exposes for sale or hire; or
 - (ii) exhibits in public; or
 - (iii) distributes; or
 - (e) in the course of a business or otherwise, sells or lets for hire; or

- (f) distributes otherwise than in the course of a business to such an extent as to affect prejudicially the copyright owner—
an object that is, and that the person knows is, an infringing copy of a copyright work.
- (2) Every person commits an offence against this section who—
 - (a) makes an object specifically designed or adapted for making copies of a particular copyright work; or
 - (b) has such an object in that person's possession,—
knowing that the object is to be used to make infringing copies for sale or hire or for use in the course of a business.
- (3) Subject to subsection (4), every person commits an offence against this section who—
 - (a) causes a literary, dramatic, or musical work to be performed, where that performance infringes copyright in that work; or
 - (b) causes a sound recording or film to be played in public or shown in public, where that playing or showing infringes copyright in that sound recording or film,—
knowing that copyright in the work or, as the case requires, the sound recording or film would be infringed by that performance or, as the case requires, that playing or that showing.
- (4) Nothing in subsection (3) applies in respect of infringement of copyright by the reception of a communication work.
- (5) Every person who commits an offence against this section is liable on conviction—
 - (a) in the case of an offence against subsection (1), to a fine not exceeding \$10,000 for every infringing copy to which the offence relates, but not exceeding \$150,000 in respect of the same transaction, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 5 years:
 - (b) in the case of an offence against subsection (2) or subsection (3), to a fine not exceeding \$150,000 or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 5 years.
- (6) Where any person is convicted of an offence against this section in circumstances where that offence involves the making of profit or gain, that offence shall be deemed to have caused a loss of property for the purposes of section 32(1)(a) of the Sentencing Act 2002, and the provisions of that Act relating

to the imposition of the sentence of reparation shall apply accordingly.

(7) Sections 126 to 129 (which relate to presumptions) do not apply to proceedings for an offence against this section.

(8) *[Repealed]*

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 28(1)–(3), (5); 1990 No 71 s 3; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 107 (UK)

Section 131(4): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 66 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 131(5): substituted, on 19 May 1998, by section 6(1) of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

Section 131(5): amended, on 20 August 2003, by section 201 of the Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49).

Section 131(5)(a): amended, on 20 August 2003, by section 201 of the Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49).

Section 131(5)(b): amended, on 20 August 2003, by section 201 of the Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49).

Section 131(6): amended, on 30 June 2002, by section 186 of the Sentencing Act 2002 (2002 No 9).

Section 131(8): repealed, on 19 May 1998, by section 6(2) of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

131A Time for laying information

Despite section 14 of the Summary Proceedings Act 1957, an information in respect of an offence against section 131 may be laid at any time within 3 years of the time when the matter of the information arose.

Section 131A: inserted, on 20 August 2003, by section 201 of the Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49).

132 Order for delivery up in criminal proceedings

- (1) The court before which proceedings are brought against a person for an offence against section 131 may, if it is satisfied that, at the time of the defendant's arrest or charge,—
- (a) the defendant had in the defendant's possession, custody, or control in the course of a business an infringing copy of a copyright work; or
 - (b) the defendant had in the defendant's possession, custody, or control an object specifically designed or

adapted for making copies of a particular copyright work, knowing that the object had been or was to be used to make infringing copies,—
order that the infringing copy or object be delivered up to the copyright owner or to such other person as the court may direct.

- (2) An order may be made under subsection (1) by the court of its own motion or on the application of the prosecution, and may be made whether or not the person is convicted of the offence, but shall not be made—
 - (a) after the end of the period of 6 years from the date on which the infringing copy or object in question was made; or
 - (b) if it appears to the court unlikely that any order will be made under section 134 in the proceedings.
- (3) Sections 126 to 129 (which relate to presumptions) apply in proceedings for an order under this section.
- (4) A person to whom an infringing copy or other object is delivered up pursuant to an order made under this section shall retain the copy or object pending the making of an order, or the decision not to make an order, under section 134.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 28(4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 108(1), (3), (5) (UK)

133 Liability of officers of body corporate

Where any body corporate is convicted of an offence against section 131, every director and every person concerned in the management of the body corporate shall be guilty of the offence if it is proved—

- (a) that the act that constituted the offence took place with his or her authority, permission, or consent; and
- (b) that he or she—
 - (i) knew, or could reasonably be expected to have known, that the offence was to be or was being committed; and
 - (ii) failed to take all reasonable steps to prevent or stop it.

Compare: 1991 No 69 s 340

133A Evidence in proceedings

- (1) In proceedings for an offence against section 131, whether by way of a hearing in the first instance or by way of appeal or otherwise, the court may receive an affidavit as evidence of the existence and ownership of copyright.
- (2) A party to the proceedings may apply to the court to require a person whose evidence has been given by affidavit to attend the proceedings for the purposes of cross-examination; and the court may make an order accordingly.

Section 133A: inserted, on 20 August 2003, by section 201 of the Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49).

*Disposal of infringing copy or other object***134 Order as to disposal of infringing copy or other object**

- (1) An application may be made to the court for an order that an infringing copy or other object delivered up pursuant to an order made under section 122 or section 132 shall be—
 - (a) forfeited to the copyright owner; or
 - (b) destroyed or otherwise dealt with as the court thinks fit.
- (2) In considering what order (if any) should be made under subsection (1), the court shall have regard to—
 - (a) whether other remedies available in proceedings for infringement of copyright would be adequate to compensate the copyright owner and to protect the interests of the copyright owner; and
 - (b) the need to ensure that no infringing copy is disposed of in a manner that would adversely affect the copyright owner.
- (3) The court shall issue directions as to the service of notice on persons having an interest in the copy or other object.
- (4) Any person having an interest in the copy or other object is entitled—
 - (a) to appear in proceedings for an order under this section, whether or not that person is served with notice; and
 - (b) to appeal against any order made, whether or not that person appears in the proceedings;—and an order made under subsection (1) shall not take effect until the end of the period within which notice of an appeal

may be given or, if before the end of that period notice of appeal is duly given, until the final determination or abandonment of the proceedings on the appeal.

- (5) Where there is more than 1 person interested in a copy or other object, the court may direct that the object be sold, or otherwise dealt with, and the proceeds divided, and shall make any other order as it thinks just.
- (6) If the court decides that no order should be made under this section, the person in whose possession, custody, or control the copy or other object was before being delivered up is entitled to its return.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 28(4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 114 (UK)

Part 7

Border protection measures

135 Definitions

In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

chief executive has the meaning given to it by section 2(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996

claimant means a person who gives a notice under section 136(1)

control of the Customs has the meaning given to it by section 20 of the Customs and Excise Act 1996

court means the High Court

Customs officer has the meaning given to it in section 2(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996

pirated copy—

- (a) means any copy of a copyright work that is a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work or the typographical arrangement of a published edition or a sound recording or a film, where the copy is made—
- (i) directly or indirectly from the copyright work; and
- (ii) without the licence of the person who owns, in the country where the copy is made, the copyright in the work; and

- (iii) in circumstances in which the making of the copy would, if it had been done in New Zealand, have constituted an infringement of copyright under this Act; and
- (b) includes any illicit recording within the meaning of section 169, including any illicit recording that is a copyright work sold in a country other than New Zealand by or with the licence of the owner of the copyright in the work in that country; but
- (c) does not include—
 - (i) any other copyright work sold in a country other than New Zealand by or with the licence of the owner of the copyright in the work in that country; or
 - (ia) any other work that is not an infringing copy within the meaning of section 12; or
 - (ii) *[Repealed]*

Section 135 **chief executive**: inserted, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 135 **collector**: repealed, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 135 **Comptroller**: repealed, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 135 **control of the Customs**: substituted, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 135 **Customs officer**: inserted, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 135 **officer of Customs**: repealed, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 135 **pirated copy** paragraph (c)(ia): inserted, on 19 May 1998, by section 7 of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

Section 135 **pirated copy** paragraph (c)(ii): repealed, on 20 August 2003, by section 201 of the Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49).

136 Notice may be given to chief executive

- (1) A person who owns the copyright in any 1 or more literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works, or 1 or more typographical arrangements of a published edition, or 1 or more sound recordings or films may give a notice in writing to the chief executive—

- (a) claiming that an item is a work, or items are works, as the case may be, in which the person owns the copyright; and
 - (b) requesting the chief executive to detain any pirated copies of the item or items, as the case may be, that are in, or at any time come into, the control of the Customs.
- (2) A notice under subsection (1) shall—
- (a) contain such particulars in support of the claim that the item is a pirated copy, or items are pirated copies, as the case may be, as may be prescribed in regulations made under this Act; and
 - (b) specify the period for which the notice is to be in force, which period shall be—
 - (i) not longer than 5 years from the date of the notice; or
 - (ii) if the copyright in the work or any of the works to which the notice relates will expire within the period of 5 years from the date of the notice, not longer than the period for which that copyright will last.
- (3) The chief executive shall, in relation to any notice given under subsection (1),—
- (a) accept the notice if the claimant and the notice given by the claimant comply with the requirements of this section and any regulations made under this Act:
 - (b) decline the notice if the claimant or the notice given by the claimant does not comply with the requirements of this section and any regulations made under this Act,—
- and shall within a reasonable period of receiving the notice advise the claimant whether the notice has been accepted or declined.
- (4) A notice accepted under subsection (3)(a) remains in force for the period specified in the notice unless—
- (a) it is revoked by the claimant by notice in writing; or
 - (b) the court orders, in proceedings under section 141(1), that the notice be discharged.

Section 136: substituted, on 1 October 1996, by section 2 of the Copyright Amendment Act 1996 (1996 No 28).

137 Determination whether item is pirated copy

- (1) Where—
- (a) a notice that has been accepted under section 136(3)(a) is in force; and
 - (b) the chief executive forms the opinion that any item that has been imported and that is in the control of the Customs may be a pirated copy to which the notice relates,—
- the chief executive may conduct such investigation as he or she considers necessary in order to establish whether or not the item appears to be a pirated copy to which the notice relates.
- (2) Where the chief executive conducts an investigation, he or she may, subject to section 138, require—
- (a) the claimant; or
 - (b) any other person appearing to the chief executive to have an interest in the item—
- to supply such information as the chief executive may specify for the purpose of the investigation, within 10 working days of being required to do so.
- (3) Whether or not the chief executive conducts any investigation, he or she must, within a reasonable period of forming an opinion under subsection (1), make a determination whether or not the item appears to be a pirated copy to which the notice relates.
- (4) Nothing in this section applies to an item that has been imported for private and domestic use.

Section 137: substituted, on 28 July 1997, by section 2 of the Copyright Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 38).

138 Limitations on requirement to supply information

- (1) The chief executive must not require any person to supply any information under section 137(2) unless the chief executive believes that the information is reasonably necessary for the purposes of an investigation under section 137(1).
- (2) Every person who is required to supply information to the chief executive under section 137(2) has the same privileges in relation to the giving of the information as witnesses have in any court.

- (3) Where any person refuses or fails to supply information required by the chief executive under section 137(2), the chief executive may, subject to subsection (2), take that refusal or failure into account in forming any opinion under section 137(1) or in making any determination under section 137(3).

Section 138: substituted, on 28 July 1997, by section 2 of the Copyright Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 38).

139 Notice of determination

- (1) Where the chief executive makes a determination under section 137(3), the chief executive must cause written notice of the determination to be served on—
- (a) the claimant; and
 - (b) any other person appearing to the chief executive to have an interest in the item—
- within such period as may reasonably be necessary to effect service.
- (2) Every notice required to be served on the claimant or other person under subsection (1) may be given to the claimant or other person—
- (a) by personal delivery to the claimant or other person; or
 - (b) by posting it to the last known address of the claimant or other person, in which case it shall be deemed to have been served on the claimant or other person at the time at which it would have been delivered in the ordinary course of post; and in proving posting—
 - (i) it shall be sufficient to prove that the notice was properly addressed; and
 - (ii) it shall be presumed, in the absence of proof to the contrary, that the notice was posted on the day on which it was dated; or
 - (c) by sending it by facsimile to the last known facsimile number of the claimant or other person, in which case it shall, in the absence of proof to the contrary, be deemed to have been served on the claimant or other person on the day after the day on which it was sent; and, in proving sending, it shall be sufficient to prove that a facsimile machine generated a record of the transmission of the notice to such facsimile number.

- (3) The detention of any item under section 140 is not rendered illegal by a failure to serve notice under subsection (1).

Section 139(1): substituted, on 28 July 1997, by section 3 of the Copyright Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 38).

140 Detention of pirated copy

- (1) Where the chief executive has formed an opinion that an item that has been imported and that is in the control of the Customs may be a pirated copy to which a notice accepted under section 136(3)(a) relates, that item shall be detained in the custody of the chief executive or any Customs officer until—
- (a) the chief executive is served with an order made in proceedings under section 141(1) that the notice be discharged; or
 - (b) the chief executive is served with an order made in proceedings under section 141(2) that the item be released; or
 - (c) any proceedings under section 141(3) in respect of that item (including any appeal) are determined by a decision that the item is not a pirated copy that has been imported other than for private and domestic use; or
 - (d) any proceedings under section 141(3) in respect of that item, including any appeal, are abandoned; or
 - (e) 10 working days have elapsed since notice was served under section 139 and the chief executive has not been served with notice of proceedings brought under section 141(3) by a person other than the importer or consignee;—
- whereupon the item shall, subject to subsection (3), be released to the person entitled to it.
- (2) The chief executive may in any particular case extend the period referred to in subsection (1)(e) to 20 working days if he or she considers it appropriate to do so in all the circumstances.
- (3) The chief executive or any Customs officer shall not release any item under subsection (1) unless—
- (a) any other legal requirements as to importation of the item are satisfied; and

- (b) any requirements made pursuant to any regulations made under this Act requiring the deposit of a security have been satisfied; and
- (c) the release of the item is not otherwise contrary to law.

Section 140: substituted, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

141 Proceedings

- (1) Any person may apply to the court for an order that a notice accepted under section 136(3)(a) be discharged, and the court may make such an order accordingly.
- (2) Any person may apply to the court for an order that an item detained under section 140 be released, and the court may make such an order accordingly.
- (3) Any person may apply to the court for a decision on whether or not an item the subject of a determination made under section 137(3) is a pirated copy that has been imported other than for private and domestic use, and the court shall make such a decision accordingly.
- (4) Notice of proceedings under subsection (3) shall be served on the chief executive.
- (5) In proceedings under subsection (3), the court shall issue directions as to the service of notice on persons having an interest in the item that is the subject of proceedings, and any such person is entitled—
 - (a) to appear in those proceedings, whether or not that person was served with notice under section 139; and
 - (b) to appeal against any order made in those proceedings, whether or not that person appeared in the proceedings.
- (6) No order made in proceedings under subsection (3) shall take effect until the end of the period within which notice of an appeal may be given or, if before the end of that period notice of appeal is duly given, until the final determination or abandonment of the proceedings on the appeal.

Section 141(4): amended, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

141A Forfeiture of goods by consent

If any pirated copies have been detained in the custody of the chief executive or any Customs officer, the importer or consignee of the copies may, by notice in writing to the chief executive, consent to the copies being forfeited to the Crown and, on the giving of such notice, the copies will be forfeited to the Crown.

Section 141A: inserted, on 20 August 2003, by section 201 of the Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49).

142 Powers of court

- (1) Where, in proceedings under section 141(3), the court decides that an item the subject of a determination made under section 137(3) is a pirated copy that has been imported other than for private and domestic use, the court shall make an order that the item be—
 - (a) forfeited to the claimant; or
 - (b) destroyed; or
 - (c) otherwise dealt with as the court thinks fit.
- (2) In considering what order should be made under subsection (1), the court shall have regard to—
 - (a) whether other remedies available in proceedings for infringement of copyright would be adequate to compensate the claimant and to protect that person's interests; and
 - (b) the need to ensure that no pirated copy is disposed of in a manner that would adversely affect the claimant.
- (3) Where more than 1 person is interested in an item, the court may direct that the item be sold, or otherwise dealt with, and the proceeds divided, and shall make any other order as it thinks just.
- (4) Where, in proceedings under section 141(3), the court decides that an item the subject of a determination made under section 141(3) is not a pirated copy that has been imported other than for private and domestic use, the court may make an order that any person who is a party to the proceedings pay compensation in such amount as the court thinks fit to the importer, consignee, or owner of the item.

143 Inspection of item

- (1) The chief executive or a Customs officer shall, in respect of any item in his or her possession that is or may be the subject of—
- (a) a notice given under section 136(1); or
 - (b) an investigation under section 137; or
 - (c) proceedings under section 141,—
- allow any person claiming to have an interest in—
- (d) the item; or
 - (e) any investigation under section 137, or any proceedings under section 141, in relation to the item—
- to inspect that item.
- (2) A person referred to in subsection (1) may—
- (a) inspect the item during normal office hours; or
 - (b) with the approval of the chief executive or a Customs officer, remove the item or an example of the item to such place, for such period, and on such conditions as the chief executive or Customs officer may specify, for the purpose of inspecting it.
- (3) Any person who intends to inspect any item under this section shall give the chief executive or Customs officer not less than 72 hours' notice of his or her intention to inspect that item.

Section 143(1): amended, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 143(2): substituted, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Section 143(3): amended, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

144 Notice of parallel import may be given to chief executive

[Repealed]

Section 144: repealed, on 19 May 1998, by section 8(1) of the Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20).

145 Delegation of powers, duties, and functions

- (1) With the written consent of the Minister of Customs, the chief executive may from time to time, either generally or particularly, by writing under his or her hand, delegate to any Customs

- officer all or any of the powers, duties, and functions conferred or imposed on the chief executive by or under this Part.
- (2) No delegation under subsection (1) shall include the power to delegate under that subsection.
 - (3) Subject to any general or special directions given or conditions imposed from time to time by the Minister of Customs or the chief executive, as the case may be, the officer to whom any powers are so delegated may exercise those powers in the same manner and with the same effect as if they had been conferred on that officer directly by this Act and not by delegation.
 - (4) Every Customs officer purporting to act pursuant to any delegation under this section shall, in the absence of proof to the contrary, be presumed to be acting in accordance with the terms of the delegation.
 - (5) Any delegation under this section may be made to any specified person or to the holder or holders for the time being of any specified office or class of offices.
 - (6) Every such delegation shall be revocable at will, and no such delegation shall prevent the exercise of any power by the chief executive.
 - (7) Any such delegation shall, until revoked, continue in force according to its tenor, notwithstanding the fact that the chief executive by whom it was made has ceased to hold office, and shall continue to have effect as if made by the successor in office of the chief executive.

Section 145: substituted, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

146 Protection of persons acting under authority of Act

Neither the Crown nor the chief executive nor any Customs officer shall be liable for any loss or damage occasioned by anything done or omitted to be done or purporting to have been done in the exercise of any power, duty, or function under this Part or any regulations made under this Act for the purposes of this Part, unless the chief executive or any Customs officer has not acted in good faith.

Compare: 1966 No 19 s 228A; 1971 No 42 s 10

Section 146: amended, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Part 8 Copyright licensing

147 Works of more than 1 author

- (1) References in this Part to licences or licensing schemes covering works of more than 1 author do not include licences or licensing schemes covering only—
- (a) a single collective work or collective works of which the authors are the same; or
 - (b) works made by or by employees of, or commissioned by, a single individual, firm, company, or group of companies.
- (2) In subsection (1), **group of companies** means a holding company and its subsidiaries as defined in sections 5 and 6 of the Companies Act 1993.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 116(4) (UK)

Section 147(2): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 67 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

References and applications with respect to licensing schemes

148 Licensing schemes to which sections 149 to 155 apply

Sections 149 to 155 apply to—

- (a) licensing schemes that—
 - (i) are operated by licensing bodies; and
 - (ii) relate to copyright in literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works, or films, or film soundtracks when accompanying a film; and
 - (iii) cover works of more than 1 author; and
 - (iv) relate to licences for copying the work or performing, showing, or playing the work in public or communicating the work to the public:
- (b) all licensing schemes in relation to copyright in sound recordings (other than film soundtracks when accompanying a film), communication works, or the typographical arrangement of published editions:
- (c) all licensing schemes that—
 - (i) relate to copyright in computer programs, sound recordings, or films; and

- (ii) relate to licences for the rental of copies of works of those descriptions to the public:
- (d) all licensing schemes that authorise—
 - (i) copying of literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works or the typographical arrangements of published editions by or on behalf of educational establishments; or
 - (ii) copying in the circumstances set out in section 45(4); or
 - (iii) recording in the circumstances set out in sections 48(1) and 91(2);—
 - (iv) *[Repealed]*

and in those sections the term **licensing scheme** means a licensing scheme of any of those descriptions.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 117 (UK)

Section 148(a)(iv): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 68(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 148(b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 68(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 148(d)(iii): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 68(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 148(d)(iv): repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 68(3) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

References with respect to licensing schemes

149 Reference of proposed licensing scheme to Tribunal

- (1) The terms of a licensing scheme that—
 - (a) is proposed to be operated by a licensing body; and
 - (b) is proposed to apply generally or in relation to any description of cases—
may be referred to the Tribunal by—
 - (c) the operator of the proposed scheme; or
 - (d) an organisation claiming to be representative of persons claiming that they require licences in cases of a description to which the scheme would apply.
- (2) The Tribunal shall first decide whether to entertain the reference and may decline to do so on the ground that the reference is premature.

- (3) If the Tribunal decides to entertain the reference, it shall consider the matter referred and make such order, either confirming or varying the proposed scheme, either generally or so far as it relates to cases of the description to which the reference relates, as the Tribunal may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (4) The order may be made so as to be in force indefinitely or for such period as the Tribunal may determine.
Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 118 (UK)

150 Reference of licensing scheme to Tribunal

- (1) If, while a licensing scheme is in operation, a dispute arises between the operator of the scheme and—
 - (a) a person claiming that he or she requires a licence in a case of a description to which the scheme applies; or
 - (b) an organisation claiming to be representative of such persons,—the operator or that person or organisation may refer the scheme, in so far as it relates to cases of that description, to the Tribunal.
- (2) A scheme that has been referred to the Tribunal under this section shall remain in operation until proceedings on the reference are concluded.
- (3) The Tribunal shall consider the matter in dispute and make such order, either confirming or varying the scheme so far as it relates to cases of the description to which the reference relates, as the Tribunal may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (4) The order may be made so as to be in force indefinitely or for such period as the Tribunal may determine.
Compare: 1962 No 33 s 39(1), (3)–(5)(a); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 119 (UK)

151 Further reference of scheme to Tribunal

- (1) Where the Tribunal has on a previous reference of a licensing scheme (whether under this section or section 149 or section 150), made an order with respect to the scheme, then, subject to subsection (2), while the order remains in force,—
 - (a) the operator of the scheme; or

- (b) a person claiming that he or she requires a licence in a case of the description to which the order applies; or
 - (c) an organisation claiming to be representative of such persons—
may again refer the scheme, so far as it relates to cases of that description, to the Tribunal.
- (2) Except with the special leave of the Tribunal, a licensing scheme shall not be referred again to the Tribunal under subsection (1) in respect of the same description of cases at a time earlier than—
- (a) the end of the period of 12 months from the date of the order on the previous reference; or
 - (b) if the order was made so as to be in force for 15 months or less, the beginning of the period of 3 months immediately before the expiry of the order,—
whichever occurs first.
- (3) A scheme that has been referred to the Tribunal under this section shall remain in operation until proceedings on the reference are concluded.
- (4) The Tribunal shall consider the matter in dispute and make such order, either confirming, varying, or further varying the scheme so far as it relates to cases of the description to which the reference relates, as the Tribunal may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (5) The order may be made so as to be in force indefinitely or for such period as the Tribunal may determine.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 40; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 120 (UK)

152 Effect of order of Tribunal made on reference

- (1) A licensing scheme that has been confirmed or varied by an order of the Tribunal made under section 149 or section 150 or section 151 shall be in force or, as the case may be, remain in operation so far as it relates to cases of the description in respect of which the order was made, so long as the order remains in force.
- (2) While an order is in force, a person who, in a case of a class to which the order applies,—

- (a) pays to the operator of the scheme any charges payable under the scheme in respect of a licence covering the case in question or, if the amount cannot be ascertained, gives an undertaking to the operator to pay the charges when ascertained; and
 - (b) complies with the other terms applicable to such a licence under the scheme—
- shall be in the same position as regards infringement of copyright as if that person had at all material times been the holder of a licence granted by the owner of the copyright in question in accordance with the scheme.
- (3) The Tribunal may direct that the order, so far as it varies the amount of charges payable, has effect from a date before that on which the order is made, but not earlier than the date on which the reference was made or, if later, on which the scheme came into operation.
 - (4) If such a direction is made,—
 - (a) any necessary repayments, or further payments, shall be made in respect of charges already paid; and
 - (b) the reference in subsection (2)(a) to the charges payable under the scheme shall be construed as a reference to the charges so payable under the order.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 39(5)(b), 45(1)–(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 123(1)–(3) (UK)

Applications with respect to licensing schemes

153 Application for grant of licence in connection with licensing scheme

- (1) A person who claims, in a case covered by a licensing scheme, that the operator of the scheme has refused to grant to that person or procure the grant to that person of a licence in accordance with the scheme, or has failed to do so within a reasonable time after being asked, may apply to the Tribunal for a licence.
- (2) A person who claims, in a case excluded from a licensing scheme,—
 - (a) that the operator of the scheme has refused to grant to that person or procure the grant to that person of a licence, or has failed to do so within a reasonable time of

- being asked, and that in the circumstances it is unreasonable that a licence should not be granted; or
- (b) that the operator of the scheme proposes terms for a licence that are unreasonable—
- may apply to the Tribunal.
- (3) A case shall be regarded as excluded from a licensing scheme for the purposes of subsection (2) if—
- (a) the scheme provides for the grant of licences subject to terms excepting matters from the licence and the case falls within such an exception; or
- (b) the case is so similar to those in which licences are granted under the scheme that it is unreasonable that it should not be dealt with in the same way.
- (4) If the Tribunal is satisfied that the claim is well-founded, it shall make an order declaring that, in respect of the matters specified in the order, the applicant is entitled to a licence on such terms as the Tribunal may determine to be applicable in accordance with the scheme or, as the case may be, to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (5) The order may be made so as to be in force indefinitely or for such period as the Tribunal may determine.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 36(3), 38(1)–(4); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 121 (UK)

154 Application for review of order as to entitlement to licence

- (1) Where the Tribunal has made an order under section 153 that a person is entitled to a licence under a licensing scheme, the operator of the scheme or the original applicant may from time to time apply to the Tribunal to review the order.
- (2) Except with the special leave of the Tribunal, an application shall not be made under subsection (1) at a time earlier than—
- (a) the end of the period of 12 months from the date of the order, or of the decision on a previous application under this section; or
- (b) if the order was made so as to be in force for 15 months or less, or as a result of the decision on a previous application under this section is due to expire within 15 months of that decision, the beginning of the period of 3 months immediately before the expiry date,—

whichever occurs first.

- (3) The Tribunal shall on an application for review under this section confirm or vary its order as the Tribunal may determine to be reasonable having regard to the terms applicable in accordance with the licensing scheme or, as the case may be, the circumstances of the case.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 122 (UK)

155 Effect of order of Tribunal made on application

Where the Tribunal has made an order under section 153 and the order remains in force, the person in whose favour the order is made shall, if that person—

- (a) pays to the operator of the scheme any charges payable in accordance with the order or, if the amount cannot be ascertained, gives an undertaking to pay the charges when ascertained; and
- (b) complies with the other terms specified in the order,—
be in the same position as regards infringement of copyright as if that person had at all material times been the holder of a licence granted by the owner of the copyright in question on the terms specified in the order.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 45(1)–(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 123(5) (UK)

References and applications with respect to licensing by licensing bodies

156 Licences to which sections 157 to 160 apply

Sections 157 to 160 apply to the following descriptions of licences granted by a licensing body otherwise than under a licensing scheme:

- (a) licences that—
- (i) relate to copyright in literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works, or films, or film soundtracks when accompanying a film; and
- (ii) cover works of more than 1 author; and
- (iii) authorise the copying of the work or the performance, showing, or playing of the work in public or the communication of the work to the public:

- (b) any licence relating to copyright in a sound recording (other than a film soundtrack when accompanying a film), communication work, or the typographical arrangement of a published edition:
- (c) all licences relating to copyright in computer programs, sound recordings, or films, so far as the licences relate to the rental of copies to the public:
- (d) licences that authorise the copying of literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works or the typographical arrangements of published editions by or on behalf of educational establishments;—

and in those sections the term **licence** means a licence of any of those descriptions.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 124 (UK)

Section 156(a)(iii): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 69(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 156(b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 69(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

157 Reference to Tribunal of proposed licence

- (1) The terms on which a licensing body proposes to grant a licence may be referred to the Tribunal by the licensing body or the prospective licensee.
- (2) The Tribunal shall first decide whether to entertain the reference, and may decline to do so on the ground that the reference is premature.
- (3) If the Tribunal decides to entertain the reference, it shall consider the terms of the proposed licence and make such order, either confirming or varying the terms, as it may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (4) The order may be made so as to be in force indefinitely or for such period as the Tribunal may determine.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 125 (UK)

158 Reference to Tribunal of expiring licence

- (1) A licensee under a licence that is due to expire, either by effluxion of time or as a result of notice given by the licensing body, may refer the licence to the Tribunal on the ground that

it is unreasonable in the circumstances that the licence should cease to be in force.

- (2) Such a reference may not be made earlier than the beginning of the period of 3 months immediately before the licence is due to expire.
- (3) A licence in respect of which a reference has been made to the Tribunal under this section shall remain in operation until proceedings on the reference are concluded.
- (4) If the Tribunal finds the reference well-founded, it shall make an order declaring that the licensee shall continue to be entitled to the benefit of the licence on such terms as the Tribunal may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (5) An order of the Tribunal under this section may be made so as to be in force indefinitely or for such period as the Tribunal may determine.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 126 (UK)

159 Application for review of order as to licence

- (1) Where the Tribunal has made an order under section 157 or section 158, the licensing body or the person entitled to the benefit of the order may apply to the Tribunal to review the order.
- (2) Except with the special leave of the Tribunal, an application shall not be made under subsection (1) at a time earlier than—
 - (a) the end of the period of 12 months from the date of the order or of the decision on a previous application under this section; or
 - (b) if the order was made so as to be in force for 15 months or less, or as a result of the decision on a previous application under this section is due to expire within 15 months of that decision, the beginning of the period of 3 months immediately before the expiry date,—whichever occurs first.
- (3) The Tribunal shall on an application for review under this section confirm or vary its order as the Tribunal may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 127 (UK)

160 Effect of order of Tribunal as to licence

- (1) Where the Tribunal has made an order under section 157 or section 158 and the order remains in force, the person entitled to the benefit of the order shall, if that person—
 - (a) pays to the licensing body any charges payable in accordance with the order or, if the amount cannot be ascertained, gives an undertaking to pay the charges when ascertained; and
 - (b) complies with the other terms specified in the order,—be in the same position as regards infringement of copyright as if that person had at all material times been the holder of a licence granted by the owner of the copyright in question on the terms specified in the order.
- (2) The benefit of the order may be assigned,—
 - (a) in the case of an order made under section 157, if assignment is not prohibited under the terms of the Tribunal's order; and
 - (b) In the case of an order made under section 158, if assignment was not prohibited under the terms of the original licence.
- (3) The Tribunal may direct that an order made under section 157 or section 158, or an order made under section 159 varying such an order, so far as it varies the amount of charges payable, has effect from a date before that on which the order is made, but not earlier than the date on which the reference or application was made or, if later, on which the licence was granted or, as the case may be, was due to expire.
- (4) If such a direction is made,—
 - (a) any necessary repayments, or further payments, shall be made in respect of charges already paid; and
 - (b) the reference in subsection (1)(a) to the charges payable in accordance with the order shall be construed, where the order is varied by a later order, as a reference to the charges so payable under the later order.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 128 (UK)

*Factors to be taken into account in certain
classes of cases*

161 Unreasonable discrimination

In determining what is reasonable on a reference or application under this Part relating to a licensing scheme or licence, the Tribunal shall have regard to—

(a) the availability of other schemes, or the granting of other licences, to other persons in similar circumstances; and

(b) the terms of those schemes or licences;—

and shall exercise its powers so as to ensure that there is no unreasonable discrimination between licensees, or prospective licensees, under the scheme or licence to which the reference or application relates and licensees under other schemes operated by, or other licences granted by, the same person.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 129 (UK)

162 Licences for reprographic copying

Where a reference or application is made under this Part relating to the licensing of reprographic copying of published literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works, or the typographical arrangements of published editions, the Tribunal shall have regard to—

(a) the extent to which published editions of the works in question are otherwise available; and

(b) the proportion of the work to be copied; and

(c) the nature of the use to which the copies are likely to be put.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 130 (UK)

163 Licences for educational establishments in respect of works included in communication works

(1) This section applies to references or applications made under this Part in relation to licences for—

(a) the recording, for educational purposes, by or on behalf of educational establishments, of communication works that include copyright works; or

(b) making copies of those recordings for educational purposes.

- (2) When this section applies, the Tribunal must, in considering what charges (if any) should be paid for a licence, have regard to the extent to which the owners of the copyright in the works included in the communication work have already received, or are entitled to receive, payment in respect of their inclusion.

Section 163: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 70 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

164 Licences to reflect conditions imposed by promoters of events

- (1) Where a reference or application is made under this Part in respect of a licence relating to a sound recording, film, or communication work that includes, or is to include, any entertainment or other event, the Tribunal—
- (a) shall have regard to any conditions imposed by the promoters of the entertainment or other event; and
 - (b) shall not hold a refusal or failure to grant a licence to be unreasonable if the licence could not have been granted consistently with any such conditions.
- (2) Nothing in this section shall require the Tribunal to have regard to any such conditions in so far as they—
- (a) purport to regulate the charges to be imposed in respect of the grant of licences; or
 - (b) relate to payments to be made to the promoters of any entertainment or other event in consideration of the grant of facilities for making the recording, film, or communication work.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 132 (UK)

Section 164(1): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 71(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 164(2)(b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 71(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

165 Licences to reflect payments in respect of underlying rights

- (1) In considering what charges (if any) should be paid for a licence on a reference or application made under this Part in relation to licences for the rental to the public of copies of computer programs, sound recordings, or films, the Tribunal shall take into account any reasonable payments that the owner of

copyright in the computer program, sound recording, or film is liable to make, in consequence of the granting of the licence or of the acts authorised by the licence, to owners of copyright in works included in the program, recording, or film.

- (2) On any reference or application made under this Part in relation to licensing in respect of copyright in sound recordings, films, or communication works, the Tribunal shall take into account, in considering what charges (if any) should be paid for a licence, any reasonable payments that the copyright owner is liable to make, in consequence of the granting of the licence or of the acts authorised by the licence, in respect of any performance included in the recording, film, or communication work.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 133 (UK)

Section 165(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 72(a) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 165(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 72(b) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

166 Licences in respect of works included in retransmissions

- (1) This section applies to applications under this Part in relation to licences to include literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works or sound recordings or films in a communication work when one communication work (in this section referred to as the **first transmission**) is, by reception and immediate retransmission, to be further communicated to the public (in this section referred to as the **further transmission**).
- (2) So far as the further transmission is to the same area as the first transmission, the Tribunal shall, in considering what charges (if any) should be paid for licences for either transmission, have regard to the extent to which the copyright owner has already received, or is entitled to receive, payment for the other transmission that adequately remunerates the copyright owner in respect of transmissions to that area.
- (3) So far as the further transmission is to an area outside that to which the first transmission is made, the Tribunal shall not take the further transmission into account in considering what

charges (if any) should be paid for licences for the first transmission.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 134 (UK)

Section 166(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 73 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Implied indemnity in schemes or licences for reprographic copying

167 Implied indemnity in certain schemes and licences for reprographic copying

- (1) This section applies to—
- (a) schemes for licensing reprographic copying of published literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic works, or the typographical arrangements of published editions; and
 - (b) licences granted by licensing bodies for such copying,—
- where the scheme or licence does not specify the works to which it applies with such particularity as to enable licensees to determine whether a work falls within the scheme or licence by inspection of the scheme or licence and the work.
- (2) There is implied—
- (a) in every scheme to which this section applies an undertaking by the operator of the scheme to indemnify a person granted a licence under the scheme; and
 - (b) in every licence to which this section applies an undertaking by the licensing body to indemnify the licensee—
- against any liability incurred by the licensee by reason of the licensee having infringed copyright by making or authorising the making of reprographic copies of a work in circumstances within the apparent scope of the licence.
- (3) For the purposes of this section, the circumstances of a case are within the apparent scope of a licence if—
- (a) it is not apparent from inspection of the licence and the work in question that the work does not fall within the description of works to which the licence applies; and
 - (b) the licence does not expressly provide that it does not extend to copyright of the description infringed.

- (4) In this section, the term **liability** includes liability to pay costs; and this section applies in relation to costs reasonably incurred by a licensee in connection with actual or contemplated proceedings against the licensee for infringement of copyright and to sums that the licensee is liable to pay in respect of such infringement.
- (5) A scheme or licence to which this section applies may contain reasonable provision—
- (a) with respect to the manner in which, and time within which, claims under the undertaking implied by this section are to be made:
 - (b) enabling the operator of the scheme or, as the case may be, the licensing body to take over the conduct of any proceedings affecting the amount of the operator's or, as the case may be, the licensing body's liability to indemnify under such an undertaking.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 136 (UK)

168 Determination of equitable remuneration

- (1) Where—
- (a) a copyright owner and a librarian cannot agree as to the remuneration to be paid to the copyright owner under section 54(2)(d); or
 - (b) a copyright owner and the Crown cannot agree as to the remuneration to be paid to the copyright owner under section 63(2); or
 - (c) an exclusive licensee and the Crown cannot agree as to the remuneration to be paid to the exclusive licensee under section 64(2); or
 - (d) a licensee and the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee, as the case may be, cannot agree on the part of the payment to be paid to the licensee under section 64(3); or
 - (e) a copyright owner and a person who makes a recording of a communication work cannot agree as to the remuneration to be paid to the copyright owner under section 91(2)(d),—
- either party may apply to the Tribunal to determine the remuneration to be paid.

- (2) The Tribunal shall consider the matter and make such order as it may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances.
- (3) Either party to an order made under this section may apply to the Tribunal to review its order.
- (4) Except with the special leave of the Tribunal, an application under subsection (3) shall not be made earlier than the end of the period of 12 months from the date of the original order or of the order on a previous application under that subsection.
- (5) The Tribunal shall on an application for review under this section confirm or vary its original order as the Tribunal may determine to be reasonable in the circumstances of the case.
- (6) An order under subsection (5) has effect from the date on which it is made or such later date as may be specified by the Tribunal.

Section 168(1)(e): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 74 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Part 9 Performers' rights

169 Interpretation

In this Part, unless the context otherwise requires,—

commercial exploitation means—

- (a) issuing recordings or copies of recordings to the public;
or
- (b) playing recordings or copies of recordings in public; or
- (c) showing recordings or copies of recordings in public; or
- (d) communicating recordings or copies of recordings to the public

convention country means an entity (whether a State, part of a State, a territory for whose international relations a State is responsible, a political union, an international organisation, or any other entity) that is a party to an international agreement or arrangement relating to performers' rights

copy, in relation to a recording,—

- (a) means a copy of a recording made directly from that recording; and

- (b) includes a copy of a recording made indirectly from that recording

exclusive recording contract means a contract between a performer and another person under which that person is entitled, to the exclusion of all other persons (including the performer), to make recordings or copies of recordings for the purposes of commercial exploitation

illicit recording—

- (a) means a recording of the whole or any substantial part of a performance made without the performer's consent and otherwise than for private and domestic use; and
- (b) includes a copy, made without the performer's consent and otherwise than for private and domestic use, of a recording where—
 - (i) the recording was made without the performer's consent; or
 - (ii) the copy is made for purposes different from those for which the performer gave his or her consent to the recording; or
 - (iii) the recording was made in accordance with any of the exemptions contained in sections 175 to 179 or sections 181 to 191, and the copy is made for different purposes

performance—

- (a) means—
 - (i) a dramatic performance, including a dance, a mime, and a performance given with the use of puppets; or
 - (ii) a musical performance; or
 - (iii) a reading or recitation of a literary work; or
 - (iv) a performance of a variety act or any similar presentation,—
being in each case either—
 - (v) a live performance given in any country by a New Zealand citizen or a person domiciled or resident in New Zealand, or by a citizen or subject of or a person domiciled or resident in a convention country; or

- (vi) a live performance given in New Zealand or a convention country; or
 - (vii) a performance to which this Part applies pursuant to section 170(2) or section 203 or pursuant to an Order in Council made under section 204; but
- (b) does not include—
- (i) a performance referred to in section 47(1); or
 - (ii) a reading, recital, or delivery of any item of news and information; or
 - (iii) a performance of a sporting activity; or
 - (iv) participation in a performance as a member of an audience

person having recording rights includes—

- (a) any person who is a party to, and has the benefit of, an exclusive recording contract to which the performance is subject; or
- (b) any person to whom the benefit of an exclusive recording contract has been assigned; or
- (c) any person who is authorised to make recordings or copies of recordings for the purposes of commercial exploitation by a person to whom paragraph (a) or paragraph (b) applies

recording, in relation to a performance, means a sound recording or film—

- (a) made directly from the performance; or
- (b) made from a communication work that includes the performance.

Compare: Copyright Act 1968 s 248A(2) (Aust); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 180(2) (UK)

Section 169 **commercial exploitation** paragraph (d): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 75(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 169 **convention country**: substituted, on 14 October 1999, by section 2(2) of the Copyright Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 124).

Section 169 **recording** paragraph (b): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 75(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

170 Application

- (1) This Part applies to any act done on or after the commencement of this Act in relation to a performance given on or after that commencement.
- (2) Notwithstanding subsection (1), where the performance was given—
 - (a) in New Zealand; or
 - (b) in a convention country in respect of which section 203 applies this Part; or
 - (c) in a convention country in respect of which an Order in Council made under section 204 is in force; or
 - (d) in any country by a New Zealand citizen or a person domiciled or resident in New Zealand, or by a citizen or subject of or a person domiciled or resident in a convention country,—

this Part also applies in relation to a performance given before the commencement of this Act if—

 - (e) a period of not more than 50 years has elapsed from the end of the calendar year in which the performance was given; or
 - (f) in the case of a performance given in a convention country, or in another country by a citizen or subject of or a person domiciled or resident in a convention country, any term of protection given to that performance in the convention country has not already expired.
- (3) Notwithstanding that, by virtue of subsection (2), this Part applies to a performance given before the commencement of this Act, nothing in this Part applies to—
 - (a) any act done, in relation to that performance, before the commencement of this Act or in pursuance of arrangements made before the commencement of this Act; or
 - (b) the sale, letting for hire, or offer or exposure for sale or hire, after the commencement of this Act, of any recording or copy of a recording in existence in New Zealand immediately before the commencement of this Act.
- (4) The rights conferred by this Part are independent of—

- (a) any copyright in, or moral rights relating to, any work performed or any sound recording or film of, or communication work that includes, the performance; and
 - (b) any other right or obligation arising otherwise than under this Part.
- (5) The rights conferred by this Part on a performer are conferred only in relation to performances by that performer, whether alone or with others.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 180(3), (4) (UK)

Section 170(4)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 76 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Performers' rights

171 Consent required for recording or live transmission of performance

- (1) A performer's rights are infringed by a person who, without the performer's consent,—
- (a) makes, otherwise than for his or her private and domestic use, a recording of the whole or any substantial part of a performance; or
 - (b) communicates live to the public the whole or any substantial part of a performance.
- (2) In proceedings for infringement of a performer's rights brought under this section, damages shall not be awarded against a defendant who shows that at the time of the infringement the defendant believed on reasonable grounds that the performer's consent had been given.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 182 (UK)

Section 171(1)(b): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 77 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

172 Infringement by use of recording made without performer's consent

A person (A) infringes a performer's rights if—

- (a) without the performer's consent and by means of a recording, A shows in public, plays in public, or communicates to the public the whole or a substantial part of a performance; and

- (b) the recording was made without the performer's consent; and
- (c) A knows or has reason to believe that the recording was made without the performer's consent.

Section 172: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 78 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

173 Copying of recordings

- (1) A performer's rights are infringed by a person who, without the performer's consent and otherwise than for that person's private and domestic use, copies a recording if the person knows or has reason to believe that the recording was made without the performer's consent.
- (2) In proceedings for infringement of a performer's rights brought under this section, damages shall not be awarded against a defendant who shows that at the time of the infringement the defendant believed on reasonable grounds that the performer's consent to the recording had been given.
- (3) A performer's rights are infringed by a person who, without the performer's consent and otherwise than for that person's private and domestic use, copies a recording—
 - (a) if the copy is made for purposes different from those for which the performer gave his or her consent to the recording; or
 - (b) if the recording was made in accordance with any of the exemptions contained in any of sections 175 to 179 or sections 181 to 191 and the copy is made for different purposes.
- (4) In proceedings for infringement of a performer's rights brought under this section, damages shall not be awarded against a defendant who shows that at the time of the infringement the defendant believed on reasonable grounds that the performer's consent to the copying of the recording had been given.

174 Infringement by importing, possessing, or dealing with illicit recording

- (1) A performer's rights are infringed by a person who, without the performer's consent,—

- (a) imports into New Zealand otherwise than for that person's private and domestic use; or
 - (b) in the course of a business, possesses, sells, lets for hire, offers or exposes for sale or hire, or distributes—
a recording that is, and that the person knows or has reason to believe is, an illicit recording.
- (2) Where, in proceedings for infringement of a performer's rights brought under this section, a defendant shows that the recording was innocently acquired by the defendant or a predecessor in title of the defendant, the only remedy available against the defendant in respect of the infringement is damages not exceeding a reasonable payment in respect of the act complained of.
- (3) In subsection (2), the term **innocently acquired** means that the person acquiring the recording did not know, and had no reason to believe, that it was an illicit recording.
- Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 184 (UK)

Acts permitted in relation to performances

175 Incidental copying of performance or recording

- (1) The rights conferred by this Part are not infringed by—
- (a) the incidental inclusion of a performance or recording in a sound recording, film, or communication work; or
 - (b) the playing of a sound recording, the showing of a film, or the making of a communication work, where the performance or sound recording has been incidentally included in that sound recording, film, or communication work; or
 - (c) the issue to the public of copies of a sound recording, film, or communication work in which a performance or recording has been incidentally included.
- (2) For the purposes of this section, a performance or recording, so far as it consists of—
- (a) music; or
 - (b) words spoken or sung with music,—
shall not be regarded as incidentally copied in another work if the performance or recording is deliberately copied.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 3 (UK)

Section 175(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 79 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

175A Transient reproduction of recording of performance

A reproduction of a recording of a performance of a work does not infringe the rights conferred by this Part in the recording if the reproduction—

- (a) is transient or incidental; and
- (b) is a necessary part of a technological process for the viewing of, or listening to, the recording by a member of the public to whom the recording is lawfully made available; and
- (c) has no independent economic significance.

Section 175A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 80 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

176 Permitted acts in relation to performances, criticism, reviews, and news reporting

Fair dealing with a performance or recording—

- (a) for the purposes of criticism or review, of that or another performance or recording, or of a work; or
 - (b) for the purposes of reporting current events—
- does not infringe any of the rights conferred by this Part.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 2 (UK)

177 Things done for purposes of instruction or examination

(1) The rights conferred by this Part are not infringed by the copying of a recording of a performance if—

- (a) the copying is done—
 - (i) in the course of preparation for instruction; or
 - (ii) for use in the course of instruction; or
 - (iii) in the course of instruction; or
 - (iv) after the course of instruction—where the lesson is on how to make films or film soundtracks or relates to the learning of a language or is conducted by correspondence; and
- (b) the copying is done by or on behalf of a person who is to give, is giving, or has given the lesson or by or on

- behalf of a person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received the lesson; and
- (c) no charge is made for the supply of a copy to any student or other person who is to receive, is receiving, or has received the lesson.
- (2) The rights conferred by this Part are not infringed—
- (a) by the copying of a recording of a performance for the purposes of setting or answering the questions in an examination; or
 - (b) by anything done for the purposes of an examination by way of communicating the questions to the candidates.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 4(1), (2) (UK)

178 Playing or showing sound recording, film, or communication work at educational establishment

- (1) The playing or showing of a sound recording, film, or communication work at an educational establishment for the purposes of instruction before an audience consisting of persons who are students or staff members at the establishment or persons directly connected with the activities of the establishment does not infringe any of the rights conferred by this Part.
- (2) For the purposes of this section, a person shall not be treated as a person directly connected with the activities of an educational establishment by reason only that the person is a parent or guardian of a student at that educational establishment.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 5 (UK)

Section 178 heading: amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 81(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 178(1): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 81(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

179 Recording of communication works by educational establishment

A recording of a communication work, or a copy of such a recording, may be made by or on behalf of an educational establishment for the educational purposes of that establishment without infringing any of the rights conferred by this Part in re-

lation to any performance or recording included in the recording or copy.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 6(1) (UK)

Section 179 heading: amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 82(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 179: amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 82(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

180 Subsequent dealings

- (1) Where a recording, or a copy of a recording, that would otherwise be an illicit recording—
 - (a) is made in accordance with section 177 or section 179; and
 - (b) is subsequently dealt with,—
it shall be treated as an illicit recording—
 - (c) for the purposes of the dealing referred to in paragraph (b), unless that dealing is authorised by the performer; and
 - (d) for the purposes of any dealing that is subsequent to the dealing referred to in paragraph (b), unless the first-mentioned dealing is authorised by the performer.
- (2) In subsection (1), the term **dealt with** means sold or let for hire, or offered or exposed for sale or hire, in the course of a business.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 paras 4(3), 6(2) (UK)

181 Parliamentary and judicial proceedings

The rights conferred by this Part are not infringed by anything done for the purposes of parliamentary or judicial proceedings or for the purposes of reporting such proceedings.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 8 (UK)

182 Royal commissions and statutory inquiries

The rights conferred by this Part are not infringed by anything done for the purposes of a Royal commission, a commission of inquiry, a ministerial inquiry, or a statutory inquiry.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 9 (UK)

183 Acts done under statutory authority

- (1) Where the doing of a particular act is specifically authorised by an enactment, the doing of that act does not infringe the rights conferred by this Part unless the enactment provides otherwise.
- (2) Nothing in this section shall be construed as excluding any defence of statutory authority otherwise available under or pursuant to any enactment.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 11 (UK)

184 Use of recordings of spoken works in certain cases

- (1) It is not an infringement of the rights conferred by this Part to use a recording of a reading or recitation of a literary work (or to copy the recording and use the copy) if—
 - (a) it was made for the purpose of—
 - (i) reporting current events; or
 - (ii) communicating all or part of the reading or recitation to the public; and
 - (b) the conditions in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are that—
 - (a) the recording is a direct recording of the reading or recitation and is not taken from a previous recording or from a communication work; and
 - (b) the making of the recording was not prohibited by or on behalf of the person giving the reading or recitation; and
 - (c) the use made of the recording is not of a kind prohibited by or on behalf of that person before the recording was made; and
 - (d) the use is by or with the authority of a person who is lawfully in possession of the recording.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 13 (UK)

Section 184(1): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 83(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 184(2)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 83(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

185 Recordings of folk songs

- (1) A recording of a performance of a song may be made for the purpose of including the song in an archive maintained by a body prescribed by regulations made under this Act without infringing any of the rights conferred by this Part, if the conditions in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are that—
 - (a) the words are unpublished and of unknown authorship at the time the recording is made; and
 - (b) the making of the recording does not infringe any copyright; and
 - (c) the making of the recording is not prohibited by any performer.
- (3) Copies of a recording made in reliance on subsection (1) and included in an archive maintained by a body prescribed by regulations made under this Act may, if the condition contained in subsection (4) is complied with, be made and supplied by the archivist without infringing any of the rights conferred by this Part.
- (4) The condition referred to in subsection (3) is that no person is furnished with more than 1 copy of the same recording.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 14 (UK)

186 Playing of sound recordings for purposes of club, society, etc

- (1) It is not an infringement of any right conferred by this Part to play a sound recording as part of the activities of, or for the benefit of, a club, society, or other organisation, if the conditions contained in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are—
 - (a) that the club, society, or organisation is not established or conducted for profit; and
 - (b) that the main objects of the club, society, or organisation are charitable or are otherwise concerned with the advancement of religion, education, or social welfare; and
 - (c) that the proceeds of any charge for admission to the place where the recording is to be heard are applied

solely for the purposes of the club, society, or organisation.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 15 (UK)

187 Incidental recording for purposes of communication work

- (1) A person who proposes to communicate a recording of a performance to the public in circumstances not infringing rights under this Part does not require consent for the purposes of this Part to the making of the further recording if the conditions in subsection (2) are complied with.
- (2) The conditions referred to in subsection (1) are that the further recording—
 - (a) must only be used for communicating it to the public in circumstances not infringing rights under this Part; and
 - (b) must be destroyed within 6 months after first being communicated to the public, unless the Minister has authorised the preservation of the recording in the records of a government department or in the national archives because of its documentary character or exceptional importance.
- (3) A recording made in accordance with this section is treated as an illicit recording—
 - (a) for the purposes of any use in breach of the condition in subsection (2)(a); and
 - (b) for all purposes after either of the conditions in subsection (2) is broken.

Section 187: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 84 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

188 Free public playing or showing of broadcast or cable programme

- (1) The playing in public or showing in public of a broadcast (other than a broadcast to which subsections (4) to (7) apply) or cable programme to an audience who have not paid for admission to the place where the broadcast or cable programme is to be heard or seen does not infringe any right conferred by this Part in relation to a performance or recording included in—
 - (a) the broadcast or cable programme; or

- (b) any sound recording or film that is played in public or shown in public by reception of the broadcast or cable programme.
- (2) For the purposes of subsection (1), the audience shall be treated as having paid for admission to a place—
 - (a) if they have paid for admission to a place of which that place forms part; or
 - (b) if goods or services are supplied at that place, or a place of which that place forms part,—
 - (i) at prices that are substantially attributable to the facilities afforded for hearing or seeing the broadcast or cable programme; or
 - (ii) at prices exceeding those usually charged there and that are partly attributable to those facilities; or
 - (c) if the place is a hotel, motel, camping ground, or any other place that admits persons for a fee for the purposes of obtaining accommodation of a temporary nature and they are persons residing at the hotel, motel, camping ground, or other place.
- (3) For the purposes of subsection (1), the following persons shall not be treated as having paid for admission to a place:
 - (a) persons admitted as residents or inmates of a place (other than a hotel, motel, camping ground, or other place to which subsection (2)(c) applies):
 - (b) persons admitted as members of a club or society where the payment is only for membership of the club or society and the provision of facilities for hearing or seeing broadcasts or cable programmes is only incidental to the main purposes of the club or society.
- (4) Subsections (5) to (7) apply in respect of the playing or showing of a broadcast—
 - (a) that is made for reception in the area in which it is played or shown; and
 - (b) that is not a satellite transmission or an encrypted transmission; and
 - (c) that is shown or played simultaneously upon reception of the transmission of the broadcast.

- (5) The playing in public or showing in public of a broadcast to which subsection (4) applies to an audience who have not paid for admission to the place where the broadcast is to be heard or seen does not infringe any right conferred by this Part in relation to a performance or recording included in—
- (a) the broadcast; or
 - (b) any sound recording or film included in the broadcast.
- (6) For the purposes of subsection (5), the audience shall be treated as having paid for admission to a place—
- (a) if they have paid for admission to a place of which that place forms part; or
 - (b) if goods or services are supplied at that place, or a place of which that place forms part,—
 - (i) at prices that are substantially attributable to the facilities afforded for hearing or seeing the broadcast; or
 - (ii) at prices exceeding those usually charged there and that are partly attributable to those facilities.
- (7) For the purposes of subsection (5), the following persons shall not be treated as having paid for admission to a place:
- (a) persons admitted as residents or inmates of a place (including, without limitation, persons residing in a hotel, motel, camping ground, or any other place that admits persons for a fee for the purposes of obtaining accommodation of a temporary nature);
 - (b) persons admitted as members of a club or society where the payment is only for membership of the club or society and the provision of facilities for hearing or seeing broadcasts or cable programmes is only incidental to the main purposes of the club or society.
- (8) Where the making of the broadcast or inclusion of the programme in a cable programme service was an infringement of the rights conferred by this Part in relation to a performance or recording, the fact that the broadcast or programme was heard or seen in public by the reception of the broadcast or cable programme shall be taken into account in assessing the damages for that infringement.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 2 para 18 (UK)

189 Reception and retransmission of broadcast in cable programme service

[Repealed]

Section 189: repealed, on 31 October 2008, by section 86 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

190 Provision of subtitled copies of communication work

(1) A prescribed body that makes a recording of a communication work for the purpose of providing people who are deaf or hard of hearing or physically or mentally disabled in any other way with copies that are subtitled or otherwise modified for their special needs, does not infringe any right under this Part in relation to a performance or recording included in that communication work.

(2) A body must not be prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1) if it is established or conducted for profit.

Section 190: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 87 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

191 Recording of communication work for archival purposes

(1) Any person (A) who records, or makes a copy of a recording of, a communication work does not infringe any right under this Part in relation to a performance or recording included in the communication work if—

- (a) the communication work falls within a prescribed class; and
- (b) A makes the recording or the copy for the purpose of it being placed in an archive maintained by a prescribed body.

(2) A body must not be prescribed for the purposes of subsection (1) if it is established or conducted for profit.

Section 191: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 88 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

192 Power of Tribunal to give consent on behalf of performer

(1) Where a person wishes to make a copy of a recording but—

- (a) the consent of a performer to the making of such a copy is required; and
- (b) either—

- (i) the identity or whereabouts of the performer cannot be ascertained by reasonable inquiry; or
- (ii) the performer unreasonably withholds his or her consent,—

the person may apply to the Tribunal for consent to make the copy.

- (2) The Tribunal may, subject to the provisions of this section, make an order giving consent to the making of the copy and may impose such conditions on the order as it thinks fit.
- (3) The consent given by the Tribunal under subsection (2) has effect as the consent of the performer for the purposes of the provisions of this Part relating to performers' rights.
- (4) The Tribunal shall not give consent under subsection (2) unless satisfied that such directions as to the service or publication of notices as the Tribunal may give have been complied with.
- (5) The Tribunal shall not give consent under subsection (2) unless satisfied that the performer's reasons for withholding consent do not include the protection of any legitimate interests of the performer; but it shall be for the performer to show what his or her reasons are for withholding consent, and in default of evidence as to his or her reasons the Tribunal may draw such inferences as it thinks fit.
- (6) In any case the Tribunal shall take into account the following factors:
 - (a) whether the recording of which the applicant seeks to make a copy was made with the performer's consent and is lawfully in the possession or control of the person proposing to make the copy:
 - (b) whether the making of the copy is consistent with the obligations of the parties to the arrangements under which the recording was made, or is otherwise consistent with the purposes for which the recording was made.
- (7) Where the Tribunal gives consent under this section, it shall, in default of agreement between the applicant and the performer, make such order as it thinks fit as to the payment to be made to the performer in consideration of consent being given.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 190 (UK)

Duration and transmission of rights

193 Duration of rights

The rights conferred by this Part exist in relation to a performance until the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the performance takes place.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 191 (UK)

194 Transmission of rights

(1) The rights conferred by this Part are not assignable, and are transmissible only in accordance with the provisions of this section.

(2) On the death of a person entitled to performers' rights,—
(a) the rights pass to such person or persons as he or she may by testamentary disposition specifically direct; and
(b) if or to the extent that there is no such direction, the rights are exercisable by his or her personal representatives;—

and references in this Part to the performer, in the context of the person having performers' rights, shall be construed as references to the person for the time being entitled to exercise those rights.

(3) Where, under subsection (2)(a), a right becomes exercisable by more than 1 person, it is exercisable by each of them independently of the other or others.

(4) Any damages recovered by personal representatives pursuant to this section in respect of an infringement after a person's death shall devolve as part of his or her estate as if the right of action had existed and been vested in him or her immediately before his or her death.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 192 (UK)

Consent

195 Consent

(1) Consent for the purposes of this Part may be given in relation to a specific performance, a specified description of performances, or performances generally, and may relate to past or future performances.

- (2) Where a right conferred by this Part passes to another person, any consent binding on the person previously entitled binds the person to whom the right passes in the same way as if the consent had been given by him or her.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 193 (UK)

Remedies for infringement

196 Proceedings for infringement of performers' rights

- (1) An infringement of any of the rights conferred by this Part is actionable by the performer in whom the right is vested.
- (2) An infringement of any of the rights conferred by this Part is also actionable, on behalf of the performer, by a person having recording rights, without any need to obtain the consent of the performer to the bringing of the proceedings, unless the performer expressly requires his or her consent to be obtained.
- (3) In proceedings for infringement of any of the rights conferred by this Part, the relief that a court may grant includes—
- (a) an injunction (subject to such terms, if any, as the court thinks fit); and
 - (b) damages.
- (4) Where, in proceedings under this Part,—
- (a) the infringement is established; and
 - (b) the court is satisfied that it is proper to do so, having regard to—
 - (i) the flagrancy of the infringement; and
 - (ii) any benefit accruing to the defendant by reason of the infringement; and
 - (iii) all other relevant matters,—

the court may award such additional damages as the justice of the case may require.

Compare: Copyright Act 1968 s 248J (Aust)

197 Order for delivery up in civil proceedings

- (1) Where a person has an illicit recording of a performance in that person's possession, custody, or control in the course of a business,—
- (a) any person having performers' rights in relation to the performance under this Part; or

- (b) any person having recording rights in relation to the performance under this Part—
may apply to the court for an order that the illicit recording be delivered up to him or her or such other person as the court may direct.
- (2) No order shall be made unless the court also makes, or it appears to the court that there are grounds for making, an order under section 202.
- (3) A person to whom an illicit recording is delivered up in pursuance of an order under this section shall, if an order under section 202 is not made, retain the illicit recording pending the making of an order, or the decision not to make an order, under that section.
- (4) Notwithstanding any rule of court, an order may be made pursuant to this section on an *ex parte* application where service of notice of the application would cause undue delay or other serious detriment to the applicant.
- (5) Nothing in this section affects any other power of the court.

Offences

198 Criminal liability for making, dealing with, using, or copying illicit recordings

- (1) Every person commits an offence against this section who, without the consent of the performer,—
- (a) makes for sale or hire; or
- (b) imports into New Zealand otherwise than for that person's private and domestic use; or
- (c) possesses in the course of a business with a view to committing any act infringing the rights conferred by this Part; or
- (d) In the course of a business,—
- (i) offers or exposes for sale or hire; or
- (ii) sells or lets for hire; or
- (iii) distributes—
- a recording that is, and that the person knows is, an illicit recording.

- (2) Every person commits an offence against this section who causes a recording that is, and that the person knows is, an illicit recording, to be—
 - (a) played in public or shown in public; or
 - (b) communicated to the public.
- (3) Every person commits an offence against this section who, otherwise than for that person's private and domestic use, copies a recording—
 - (a) without the consent of the performer, if the person knows that the recording was made without the performer's consent; or
 - (b) if the copy is made for purposes different from those for which the performer gave his or her consent, and the person knows that the performer has not consented to the copying of the recording for different purposes; or
 - (c) if the original recording was made in accordance with any of the exemptions contained in any of sections 175 to 179 or sections 181 to 191, and the copy is made for different purposes, and the person knows that the performer has not consented to the copying of the recording for those different purposes.
- (4) Every person who commits an offence against subsection (1) or subsection (2) or subsection (3) is liable on summary conviction,—
 - (a) in the case of an offence against subsection (1), to a fine not exceeding \$5,000 for every illicit recording to which the offence relates, but not exceeding \$50,000 in respect of the same transaction, or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 3 months;
 - (b) in the case of an offence against subsection (2) or subsection (3), to a fine not exceeding \$50,000 or to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 3 months.
- (5) Where any person is convicted of an offence against this section in circumstances where that offence involves the making of profit or gain, that offence shall be deemed to have caused a loss of property for the purposes of section 32(1)(a) of the Sentencing Act 2002, and the provisions of that Act relating

to the imposition of the sentence of reparation shall apply accordingly.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 198(1), (2), (3)(a), (5), (6) (UK)

Section 198(2)(b): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 89 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 198(5): amended, on 30 June 2002, by section 186 of the Sentencing Act 2002 (2002 No 9).

199 Order for delivery up in criminal proceedings

- (1) The court before which proceedings are brought against a person for an offence against section 198 may, if satisfied that, at the time of the defendant's arrest or charge, the defendant had in his possession, custody, or control in the course of a business an illicit recording, order that the recording be delivered up to a person having performers' rights in relation to the performance or to such other person as the court may direct.
- (2) An order may be made under subsection (1) by the court of its own motion or on the application of the prosecution, and may be made whether or not the person is convicted of the offence, but shall not be made if it appears to the court unlikely that any order will be made under section 202 in the proceedings.
- (3) A person to whom an illicit recording is delivered up pursuant to an order made under this section shall retain the recording pending the making of an order, or the decision not to make an order, under section 202.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 199(1), (3), (5) (UK)

200 False representation of authority to give consent

- (1) Every person commits an offence against this section who represents falsely that he or she is authorised by any person to give consent for the purposes of this Part in relation to a performance, unless he or she believes on reasonable grounds that he or she is entitled to do so.
- (2) A person who commits an offence against this section is liable on summary conviction to imprisonment for a term not exceeding 3 months or a fine not exceeding \$10,000.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 201 (UK)

201 Liability of officers of body corporate

Where any body corporate is convicted of an offence against section 198 or section 200, every director and every person concerned in the management of the body corporate shall be guilty of the offence if it is proved—

- (a) that the act that constituted the offence took place with his or her authority, permission, or consent; and
- (b) that he or she—
 - (i) knew, or could reasonably be expected to have known, that the offence was to be or was being committed; and
 - (ii) failed to take all reasonable steps to prevent or stop it.

Compare: 1991 No 69 s 340

202 Order as to disposal of illicit recording

- (1) An application may be made to the court for an order that an illicit recording delivered up pursuant to an order made under section 197 or section 199 shall be—
 - (a) forfeited to such person having performers' rights in relation to the performance as the court may direct; or
 - (b) destroyed or otherwise dealt with as the court thinks fit.
- (2) In considering what order (if any) should be made under subsection (1), the court shall have regard to—
 - (a) whether other remedies available in proceedings for infringement of the rights conferred by this Part would be adequate to compensate the person or persons entitled to the rights and to protect the interests of that person or those persons; and
 - (b) the need to ensure that no illicit recording is disposed of in a manner that would adversely affect a person having performers' rights in the performance.
- (3) The court shall issue directions as to the service of notice on persons having an interest in the recording.
- (4) Any person having an interest in the recording is entitled—
 - (a) to appear in proceedings for an order under this section, whether or not he or she is served with notice; and
 - (b) to appeal against any order made, whether or not he or she appears in the proceedings;—

and an order made under subsection (1) shall not take effect until the end of the period within which notice of an appeal may be given or, if before the end of that period notice of appeal is duly given, until the final determination or abandonment of the proceedings on the appeal.

- (5) Where there is more than 1 person interested in a recording, the court may direct that the recording be sold, or otherwise dealt with, and the proceeds divided, and shall make any other order as it thinks just.
- (6) If the court decides that no order should be made under this section, the person in whose possession, custody, or control the recording was before being delivered up is entitled to its return.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 204 (UK)

Application to foreign countries

203 Application of this Part to convention countries

[Repealed]

Section 203: repealed, on 14 October 1999, by section 4 of the Copyright Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 124).

204 Application of Part 9 to other entities

- (1) On the recommendation of the Minister, the Governor-General may by Order in Council apply any provision or provisions of this Part to any entity specified in the order (whether a State, part of a State, a territory for whose international relations a State is responsible, a political union, an international organisation, or any other entity).
- (2) An order—
 - (a) may apply a provision unconditionally, or subject to conditions, modifications, or both; and
 - (b) may apply a provision generally, or in relation to performances of a particular class or classes.
- (3) The Minister must not recommend the making of an order applying any provision of this Part to any entity unless satisfied that—
 - (a) the entity is a convention country; or

- (b) provision is or will be made under the law of or applicable to the entity giving reciprocal protection to performances generally or (as the case requires) performances of the class or classes to which the order applies that provision of this Part.
- (4) If the Government of a State is responsible for the international relations of 1 or more territories, an order may apply a provision to—
- (a) the State and the territory (or 1 or more of the territories) concerned; or
 - (b) just the State; or
 - (c) just the territory (or 1 or more of the territories) concerned.

Section 204: substituted, on 14 October 1999, by section 2(1) of the Copyright Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 124).

Part 10 **Copyright Tribunal**

Constitution

205 Copyright Tribunal

The Tribunal constituted by section 30 of the Copyright Act 1962 and known as the Copyright Tribunal shall continue in being.

206 Membership of Tribunal

- (1) The Tribunal shall consist of a chairperson and 2 other persons.
- (2) The chairperson of the Tribunal—
 - (a) shall be appointed as chairperson by the Governor-General on the recommendation of the Minister made after consultation with the Minister of Justice; and
 - (b) shall be a barrister or solicitor of the High Court of not less than 7 years' practice, whether or not the barrister or solicitor holds or has held judicial office.
- (3) The 2 other persons shall be appointed as members of the Tribunal by the Governor-General on the recommendation of the Minister.

- (4) No person shall be deemed to be employed in the service of the Crown for the purposes of the State Sector Act 1988 by virtue merely of his or her appointment to the Tribunal.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 30(1), (2), (7)

Section 206(2)(a): substituted, on 1 October 1995, by section 10(3) of the Department of Justice (Restructuring) Act 1995 (1995 No 39).

207 Term of office of members of Tribunal

- (1) Every member of the Tribunal shall hold office for a term not exceeding 5 years.
- (2) Any member of the Tribunal may hold that office concurrently with any other office held by him or her and may from time to time be reappointed.
- (3) Where the term for which a member was appointed expires, that member, unless sooner vacating or removed from office under section 208, shall continue to hold office, by virtue of the appointment for the term that has expired, until—
- (a) that member is reappointed; or
- (b) a successor to that member is appointed.
- (4) The powers of the Tribunal shall not be affected by any vacancy in its membership.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 30(3)–(6)

208 Vacation of office

- (1) Any member of the Tribunal may at any time resign his or her office by delivering a notice in writing to that effect to the Minister.
- (2) Any member of the Tribunal shall be deemed to have vacated his or her office if he or she dies or is, under the Insolvency Act 2006, adjudged bankrupt.
- (3) Any member of the Tribunal may at any time be removed from office by the Governor-General for disability affecting performance of duty, neglect of duty, or misconduct, proved to the satisfaction of the Governor-General.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 31, 32

Section 208(2): amended, on 3 December 2007, by section 445 of the Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55).

209 Deputies of members

- (1) Where any member of the Tribunal—
- (a) becomes incapable of acting by reason of illness, absence, or other sufficient cause; or
 - (b) deems it not proper or desirable that he or she should act in any particular proceedings,—
- the Governor-General, on the recommendation of the Minister, may appoint a person to act as the deputy of the member for the period or purpose stated in the appointment.
- (2) No person shall be appointed as a deputy of the chairperson unless he or she is eligible for appointment as chairperson.
- (3) Any deputy shall, while acting as such, be deemed to be a member of the Tribunal, and the deputy of the chairperson shall have all the powers of the chairperson.
- (4) No appointment of a deputy, and no acts done by a deputy as such, and no acts done by the Tribunal while any deputy is acting as such, shall in any proceedings be questioned on the ground that the occasion for the appointment had not arisen or had ceased.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 33

210 Remuneration and travelling allowances

- (1) The Tribunal is hereby declared to be a statutory board within the meaning of the Fees and Travelling Allowances Act 1951.
- (2) There shall be paid to members of the Tribunal, out of money appropriated by Parliament for the purpose, remuneration by way of fees, salary, or allowances and travelling allowances and expenses in accordance with the Fees and Travelling Allowances Act 1951, and the provisions of that Act shall apply accordingly.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 35

*Jurisdiction and procedure***211 Jurisdiction of Tribunal**

The Tribunal shall have such functions as are conferred on it by this Act or any other enactment.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 37

212 Parties to proceedings

- (1) The operator of the licensing scheme or the proposed licensing scheme shall be a party to any proceedings under section 149 or section 150 or section 151 or section 153 or section 154 or section 157 or section 158 or section 159.
- (2) The Tribunal may direct that an organisation or person be added as a party to any proceedings before the Tribunal under this Act where the Tribunal is satisfied that the organisation or person has a substantial interest in the matter in dispute and either—
 - (a) the organisation or person applies to be made a party to those proceedings; or
 - (b) the Tribunal of its own motion considers it desirable.
- (3) The Attorney-General, if in his or her opinion the public interest is or may be involved, may, on giving such notice to other parties as the Tribunal may direct, appear and be heard, or present submissions in writing on any proceedings before the Tribunal.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 42

213 Sittings of Tribunal

- (1) The Tribunal shall fix a time and place for the hearing of proceedings and shall cause notice to be given to the parties of the time and place so fixed.
- (2) No sitting of the Tribunal shall take place, except for the purposes of interlocutory or other ancillary matters, unless all members are present.
- (3) Every sitting of the Tribunal shall be held in such place as the Tribunal deems convenient.
- (4) Every sitting of the Tribunal shall be held in public unless the Tribunal in any particular case, having regard to the interests of the parties and of all other persons concerned, considers that the sitting or any part of it should be held in private.
- (5) The Tribunal may make an order prohibiting the publication of any report or description of the proceedings or of any part of the proceedings.
- (6) Every person commits an offence and is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding \$3,000 who acts in contra-

vention of any order made by the Tribunal under subsection (5).

- (7) Any sitting of the Tribunal may be adjourned from time to time and from place to place.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 43(1)–(4)

214 Procedure of Tribunal

- (1) Any party to proceedings before the Tribunal may appear personally or by the party's barrister, solicitor, or agent.
- (2) The Tribunal may appoint a barrister or solicitor to appear and be heard in proceedings as counsel assisting the Tribunal.
- (3) The decision of the majority of members shall be the decision of the Tribunal.
- (4) Every decision of the Tribunal shall be in writing and shall state the reasons for the decision.
- (5) Except as otherwise provided in this Part, the Tribunal shall determine its own procedure.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 43(5)–(8)

215 Evidence in proceedings before Tribunal

- (1) The Tribunal may receive as evidence any statement, document, information, or matter that may in its opinion assist it to deal effectively with the matters before it, whether or not the same would be admissible in a court of law.
- (2) The Tribunal may take evidence on oath, and for that purpose any member or officer of the Tribunal may administer an oath.
- (3) The Tribunal may permit a person appearing as a witness before it to give evidence by tendering a written statement and, if the Tribunal thinks fit, verifying it by oath.
- (4) Subject to subsections (1) to (3), the Evidence Act 2006 applies to the Tribunal in the same manner as if the Tribunal were a court within the meaning of that Act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 44; 1993 No 82 s 106

Section 215(4): amended, on 1 August 2007, by section 216 of the Evidence Act 2006 (2006 No 69).

216 Witness summons

- (1) The Tribunal may of its own motion, or on the application of any party to the proceedings, issue a witness summons to any person requiring that person to attend before the Tribunal to give evidence at the hearing of the proceedings.
- (2) The witness summons shall state—
 - (a) the place where the person is to attend; and
 - (b) the date and time when the person is to attend; and
 - (c) the papers, documents, records, or things that that person is required to bring and produce to the Tribunal; and
 - (d) the entitlement to be tendered or paid a sum in respect of allowances and travelling expenses; and
 - (e) the penalty for failing to attend.
- (3) The power to issue a witness summons may be exercised by the Tribunal or the chairperson, or by any officer of the Tribunal purporting to act by the direction or with the authority of the Tribunal or the chairperson.

Compare: 1993 No 82 s 109

217 Service of summons

- (1) A witness summons may be served—
 - (a) by delivering it personally to the person summoned; or
 - (b) by posting it by registered letter addressed to the person summoned at that person's usual place of residence.
- (2) The summons shall,—
 - (a) where it is served under subsection (1)(a), be served at least 24 hours before the attendance of the witness is required; or
 - (b) where it is served under subsection (1)(b), be served at least 10 days before the date on which the attendance of the witness is required.
- (3) If the summons is posted by registered letter, it shall be deemed for the purposes of subsection (2)(b) to have been served at the time when the letter would be delivered in the ordinary course of post.

Compare: 1993 No 82 s 110

218 Witnesses' allowances

- (1) Every witness attending before the Tribunal to give evidence pursuant to a summons shall be entitled to be paid witnesses' fees, allowances, and travelling expenses according to the scales for the time being prescribed by regulations made under the Summary Proceedings Act 1957, and those regulations shall apply accordingly.
- (2) On each occasion on which the Tribunal issues a summons under section 216, the Tribunal, or the person exercising the power of the Tribunal under subsection (3) of that section, shall fix an amount that, on the service of the summons, or at some other reasonable time before the date on which the witness is required to attend, shall be paid or tendered to the witness.
- (3) The amount fixed under subsection (2) shall be the estimated amount of the allowances and travelling expenses to which, in the opinion of the Tribunal or person, the witness will be entitled according to the prescribed scales if the witness attends at the time and place specified in the summons.
- (4) Where a party to the proceedings has requested the issue of the witness summons, the fees, allowances, and travelling expenses payable to the witness shall be paid by that party.
- (5) Where the Tribunal has of its own motion issued the witness summons, the Tribunal may direct that the amount of those fees, allowances, and travelling expenses—
 - (a) form part of the costs of the proceedings; or
 - (b) be paid from money appropriated by Parliament for the purpose.

Compare: 1993 No 82 s 111

219 Privileges and immunities

- (1) Witnesses appearing before the Tribunal shall have the same privileges and immunities as witnesses have in proceedings in a District Court.
- (2) Counsel and agents appearing before the Tribunal shall have the same privileges and immunities as counsel have in proceedings in a District Court.

Compare: 1993 No 82 s 112

220 Non-attendance or refusal to co-operate

- (1) Every person commits an offence who, after being summoned to attend to give evidence before the Tribunal or to produce to the Tribunal any papers, documents, records, or things, without sufficient cause,—
- (a) fails to attend in accordance with the summons; or
 - (b) refuses to be sworn or to give evidence, or, having been sworn, refuses to answer any question that the person is lawfully required by the Tribunal or any member of it to answer concerning the proceedings; or
 - (c) fails to produce any such paper, document, record, or thing.
- (2) Every person who commits an offence against subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding \$1,500.
- (3) No person summoned to attend before the Tribunal shall be convicted of an offence against subsection (1) unless there was tendered or paid to that person travelling expenses in accordance with section 218.

Compare: 1993 No 82 s 113

221 Contempt of Tribunal

- (1) Every person commits an offence and is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding \$1,000 who—
- (a) assaults, threatens, or intimidates, or intentionally insults, the Tribunal or any member of it or any special adviser to or officer of the Tribunal, during a sitting of the Tribunal, or in going to, or returning from, any sitting; or
 - (b) intentionally interrupts the proceedings of the Tribunal or otherwise misbehaves while the Tribunal is sitting; or
 - (c) intentionally and without lawful excuse disobeys an order or direction of a member of the Tribunal in the course of any proceedings before the Tribunal.
- (2) A member of the Tribunal may order the exclusion from a sitting of the Tribunal of any person whose behaviour, in that member's opinion, constitutes an offence against subsection (1), whether or not such person is charged with the offence;

and any constable may take such steps as are reasonably necessary to enforce such an exclusion.

Section 221(2): amended, on 1 October 2008, pursuant to section 116(a)(ii) of the Policing Act 2008 (2008 No 72).

222 Costs

- (1) The Tribunal, in any proceedings before it under this Act, may make such order as to costs as it thinks fit.
- (2) Any such order as to costs may be filed in a District Court and may be enforced as a judgment of that court.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 46

223 Stating case for High Court

- (1) The Tribunal may, at any time, before or during the hearing or before delivering its decision, on the application of any party to the proceedings or of its own motion, state a case for the opinion of the High Court on any question of law arising in any proceedings before the Tribunal.
- (2) The Tribunal shall give notice to the parties to the proceedings of the Tribunal's intention to state a case under this section, specifying the registry of the High Court in which the case is to be filed.
- (3) Except where the Tribunal intends to state the case of its own motion, the question shall be in the form of a special case to be drawn up by the parties to the proceedings, and, if the parties do not agree, to be settled by the Tribunal.
- (4) Where the Tribunal intends to state a case of its own motion, it shall itself state and sign a case setting forth the facts and questions of law arising for the determination of the High Court.
- (5) Every case stated for the High Court under this section shall be dealt with in accordance with rules of court.
- (6) The High Court shall hear and determine any question submitted to it under this section, and shall remit the case with its opinion to the Tribunal.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 47; 1993 No 82 s 122

224 Appeal on question of law

- (1) Where any party to any proceedings before the Tribunal under this Act is dissatisfied with any determination of the Tribunal as being erroneous in point of law, that party may appeal to the High Court on that question of law.
- (2) Every appeal under this section shall be dealt with in accordance with rules of court.

Compare: 1993 No 94 s 58

Part 11
Miscellaneous provisions

225 Rights and privileges under other enactments or common law

- (1) Nothing in this Act affects—
 - (a) any right or privilege of any person under any other enactment;
 - (b) any right or privilege of the Crown existing otherwise than under an enactment;
 - (c) any right or privilege of the House of Representatives;
 - (d) the right of the Crown or any person deriving title from the Crown to sell, use, or otherwise deal with objects forfeited under the laws relating to customs and excise;
 - (e) the operation of any rule of equity relating to breaches of trust or confidence.
- (2) Subject to subsection (1), no copyright or right in the nature of copyright shall exist otherwise than under this Act or some other enactment in that behalf.
- (3) Nothing in this Act affects any rule of law preventing or restricting the enforcement of copyright, on grounds of public interest or otherwise.
- (4) Nothing in this Act affects any right of action or other remedy, whether civil or criminal, available otherwise than under this Act in respect of acts infringing any of the rights conferred by Part 4.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 5, 67; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 171 (UK)

Technological protection measures

Heading: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226 Definitions of TPM terms

In sections 226A to 226E, unless the context otherwise requires,—

TPM or technological protection measure—

- (a) means any process, treatment, mechanism, device, or system that in the normal course of its operation prevents or inhibits the infringement of copyright in a TPM work; but
- (b) for the avoidance of doubt, does not include a process, treatment, mechanism, device, or system to the extent that, in the normal course of operation, it only controls any access to a work for non-infringing purposes (for example, it does not include a process, treatment, mechanism, device, or system to the extent that it controls geographic market segmentation by preventing the playback in New Zealand of a non-infringing copy of a work)

TPM circumvention device means a device or means that—

- (a) is primarily designed, produced, or adapted for the purpose of enabling or facilitating the circumvention of a technological protection measure; and
- (b) has only limited commercially significant application except for its use in circumventing a technological protection measure

TPM work means a copyright work that is protected by a technological protection measure.

Section 226: substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226A Prohibited conduct in relation to technological protection measure

- (1) A person (A) must not make, import, sell, distribute, let for hire, offer or expose for sale or hire, or advertise for sale or hire, a TPM circumvention device that applies to a technological protection measure if A knows or has reason to believe

that it will, or is likely to, be used to infringe copyright in a TPM work.

- (2) A person (A) must not provide a service to another person (B) if—
 - (a) A intends the service to enable or assist B to circumvent a technological protection measure; and
 - (b) A knows or has reason to believe that the service will, or is likely to, be used to infringe copyright in a TPM work.
- (3) A person (A) must not publish information enabling or assisting another person to circumvent a technological protection measure if A intends that the information will be used to infringe copyright in a TPM work.

Section 226A: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226B Rights of issuer of TPM work

- (1) This section applies if a TPM work is issued to the public by, or under licence from, the copyright owner.
- (2) The issuer of the TPM work has the same rights against a person who contravenes section 226A as a copyright owner has in respect of an infringement of copyright.
- (3) The issuer of the TPM work has the same rights under section 122 (order for delivery up in civil proceedings) or 132 (order for delivery up in criminal proceedings) in relation to a TPM circumvention device as a copyright owner has in relation to an infringing copy.
- (4) Sections 126 to 129 (which relate to certain presumptions) apply in relation to proceedings under this section.
- (5) Section 134 (order as to disposal of infringing copy or other object) applies, with all necessary modifications, in relation to the disposal of anything that is delivered up under subsection (3).

Section 226B: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226C Offence of contravening section 226A

- (1) A person (A) commits an offence who, in the course of business, makes, imports, sells, distributes, lets for hire, offers or

exposes for sale or hire, or advertises for sale or hire, a TPM circumvention device that applies to a technological protection measure if A knows that it will, or is likely to, be used to infringe copyright in a TPM work.

- (2) A person (**A**) commits an offence who, in the course of business, provides a service to another person (**B**) if—
 - (a) A intends the service to enable or assist B to circumvent a technological protection measure; and
 - (b) A knows that the service will, or is likely to, be used to infringe copyright in a TPM work.
- (3) A person (**A**) commits an offence who, in the course of business, publishes information enabling or assisting another person to circumvent a technological protection measure if A intends that the information will be used to infringe copyright in a TPM work.
- (4) A person who commits an offence under this section is liable on conviction on indictment to a fine not exceeding \$150,000 or a term of imprisonment not exceeding 5 years or both.

Section 226C: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226D When rights of issuer of TPM work do not apply

- (1) The rights that the issuer of a TPM work has under section 226B do not prevent or restrict the exercise of a permitted act.
- (2) The rights that the issuer of a TPM work has under section 226B do not prevent or restrict the making, importation, sale, or letting for hire of a TPM circumvention device to enable—
 - (a) a qualified person to exercise a permitted act under Part 3 using a TPM circumvention device on behalf of the user of a TPM work; or
 - (b) a person referred to in section 226E(3) to undertake encryption research.
- (3) In this section and in section 226E, **qualified person** means—
 - (a) the librarian of a prescribed library; or
 - (b) the archivist of an archive; or
 - (c) an educational establishment; or
 - (d) any other person specified by the Governor-General by Order in Council on the recommendation of the Minister.

- (4) A qualified person must not be supplied with a TPM circumvention device on behalf of a user unless the qualified person has first made a declaration to the supplier in the prescribed form.
- (5) In this section,—
archive has the same meaning as in section 50(1)
archivist includes a person acting on behalf of the archivist
encryption technology means the scrambling and descrambling of information using mathematical formulae or algorithms
librarian includes a person acting on behalf of the librarian
prescribed library has the same meaning as in section 50(1).
- (6) In this section and in section 226E, **encryption research** means identifying and analysing flaws and vulnerabilities of encryption technology.

Section 226D: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226E User's options if prevented from exercising permitted act by TPM

- (1) Nothing in this Act prevents any person from using a TPM circumvention device to exercise a permitted act under Part 3.
- (2) The user of a TPM work who wishes to exercise a permitted act under Part 3 but cannot practically do so because of a TPM may do either or both of the following:
 - (a) apply to the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee for assistance enabling the user to exercise the permitted act:
 - (b) engage a qualified person (*see* section 226D(3)) to exercise the permitted act on the user's behalf using a TPM circumvention device, but only if the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee has refused the user's request for assistance or has failed to respond to it within a reasonable time.
- (3) Nothing in this Act prevents any person from using a TPM circumvention device to undertake encryption research if that person—
 - (a) is either—

- (i) engaged in a course of study at an educational establishment in the field of encryption technology;
or
 - (ii) employed, trained, or experienced in the field of encryption technology; and
 - (b) has either—
 - (i) obtained permission from the copyright owner or exclusive licensee of the copyright to the use of a TPM circumvention device for the purpose of the research; or
 - (ii) has taken, or will take, all reasonable steps to obtain that permission.
- (4) A qualified person who exercises a permitted act on behalf of the user of a TPM work must not charge the user more than a sum consisting of the total of the cost of the provision of the service and a reasonable contribution to the qualified person's general expenses.

Section 226E: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Copyright management information

Heading: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226F Meaning of copyright management information

In sections 226G, 226H, and 226J **CMI** or **copyright management information** means information attached to, or embodied in, a copy of a work that—

- (a) identifies the work, and its author or copyright owner;
or
- (b) identifies or indicates some or all of the terms and conditions for using the work, or indicates that the use of the work is subject to terms and conditions.

Section 226F: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226G Interference with CMI prohibited

- (1) A person (**A**) must not remove or modify any copyright management information attached to, or embodied in, a copy of a work.
- (2) However, subsection (1) does not apply if—
 - (a) A has the authority of the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee to remove or modify the copyright management information; or
 - (b) A does not know, and has no reason to believe, that the removal or modification will induce, enable, facilitate, or conceal an infringement of the copyright in the work.

Section 226G: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226H Commercial dealing in work subject to CMI interference

- (1) A person (**A**) must not, in the course of business, make, import, sell, let for hire, offer or expose for sale or hire, or advertise for sale or hire, a copy of a work if any copyright management information attached to, or embodied in, the copy has been removed or modified without the authority of the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee.
- (2) However, subsection (1) does not apply if—
 - (a) A has the authority of the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee to remove or modify the copyright management information; or
 - (b) A does not know, and has no reason to believe, that the removal or modification will induce, enable, facilitate, or conceal an infringement of the copyright in the work; or
 - (c) A does not know, and has no reason to believe, that any copyright management information attached to, or embodied in, the copy has been removed or modified without the authority of the copyright owner or the exclusive licensee.

Section 226H: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226I Contravention of section 226G or 226H

A copyright owner or licensee of a work has the same rights in relation to a contravention of section 226G or 226H as a copyright owner has in respect of an infringement of copyright.

Section 226I: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

226J Offence of dealing in work subject to CMI interference

- (1) A person (A) who contravenes section 226H commits an offence if—
- (a) A knows that the copyright management information has been removed or modified without the authority of the copyright owner or exclusive licensee; and
 - (b) A knows that dealing in the work will induce, enable, facilitate, or conceal an infringement of the copyright in the work.
- (2) A person who commits an offence under subsection (1) is liable on conviction on indictment to a fine not exceeding \$150,000 or a term of imprisonment not exceeding 5 years or both.

Section 226J: inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 90 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

227 Offence of fraudulently receiving programmes

- (1) Every person commits an offence and is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding \$5,000 who, with intent to avoid payment of any charge applicable to the reception of a programme included in a communication work provided from a place in New Zealand, receives such a programme.
- (2) Where any body corporate is convicted of an offence against this section, every director and every person concerned in the management of the body corporate shall be guilty of the offence if it is proved—
- (a) that the act that constituted the offence took place with his or her authority, permission, or consent; and
 - (b) that he or she—
 - (i) knew, or could reasonably be expected to have known, that the offence was to be or was being committed; and

- (ii) failed to take all reasonable steps to prevent or stop it.

Compare: 1991 No 69 s 340; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 297 (UK)

Section 227(1): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 91 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

228 Rights and remedies in respect of apparatus, etc, for unauthorised reception of transmissions

- (1) A person who—
 - (a) makes charges for the reception of programmes included in a communication work provided from a place in New Zealand; or
 - (b) sends encrypted transmissions of any other description from a place in New Zealand—is entitled to the rights and remedies in subsections (2) and (3).
- (2) A person to whom subsection (1) applies—
 - (a) has the same rights and remedies against a person referred to in subsection (3) as a copyright owner has in respect of an infringement of copyright; and
 - (b) has the same rights under section 122 or section 132 in relation to any apparatus or device (of the kind referred to in subsection (3)(a)) as a copyright owner has in relation to an infringing copy.
- (3) The person referred to in subsection (2) is a person who—
 - (a) makes, imports, sells, or lets for hire any apparatus or device designed or adapted to enable or assist persons to receive the programmes or other transmissions when they are not entitled to do so; or
 - (b) publishes any information that is calculated to enable or assist persons to receive the programmes or other transmissions when they are not entitled to do so.
- (4) In section 121(1) as it applies to proceedings for infringement of the rights conferred by this section, the reference to the defendant not knowing or having reason to believe that copyright existed in the work shall be construed as a reference to not knowing or having reason to believe that the acts complained of infringed the rights conferred by this section.

- (5) Section 134 applies, with all necessary modifications, in relation to the disposal of anything delivered up under subsection (2)(b).

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 298 (UK)

Section 228(1)(a): amended, on 31 October 2008, pursuant to section 92 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Other countries

229 Supplementary provisions as to fraudulent reception

- (1) The Governor-General may from time to time, by Order in Council,—
- (a) provide that section 227 applies in relation to programmes included in services provided from a country or territory outside New Zealand; and
 - (b) provide that section 228 applies in relation to such programmes and to encrypted transmissions sent from such a country or territory.
- (2) No such order shall be made unless it appears to the Governor-General that provision has been or will be made under the laws of that country or territory giving adequate protection to persons making charges for programmes included in communication works provided from New Zealand or, as the case may be, for encrypted transmissions sent from New Zealand.
- (3) Where sections 227 and 228 apply in relation to a communication work, they also apply to any service run for the person providing that service, or a person providing programmes for that service, where the service so run consists wholly or mainly in the sending by means of a telecommunications system of sounds or visual images, or both.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 299 (UK)

Section 229(2): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 93(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 229(3): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 93(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

230 Application to convention countries

- (1) Subject to subsection (2), the provisions of this Act, other than the provisions of Part 9, shall—

- (a) apply in relation to persons who are citizens or subjects of any convention country or are domiciled or resident there, as they apply in relation to persons who are New Zealand citizens or are domiciled or resident in New Zealand:
- (b) apply in relation to bodies incorporated under the law of any convention country as they apply in relation to bodies incorporated under the law of New Zealand:
- (c) apply in relation to works first published in any convention country as they apply in relation to works first published in New Zealand:
- (d) apply in relation to communication works communicated from any convention country as they apply in relation to communication works communicated from New Zealand,—

until the close of 31 December 1995 or, in relation to any particular convention country, the coming into force in respect of that convention country of an Order in Council made under section 232, whichever is the earlier.

- (2) For the avoidance of doubt, it is hereby declared that subsection (1) applies, in relation to a state of affairs or an action referred to in that subsection as existing or taking place in a convention country, whether or not the country in which the state of affairs existed or the action was taken was, at the time the state of affairs existed or the action was taken, a convention country.
- (3) No provision of this Act shall apply, pursuant to subsection (1), to a work made before the commencement of this Act unless—
 - (a) copyright existed in the work under the Copyright Act 1962 immediately before the commencement of this Act; or
 - (b) the work enjoyed protection in the nature of copyright in any convention country and, at the commencement of this Act, the term of that protection had not expired; or
 - (c) the work was first published in a convention country.

Section 230(1)(d): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 94 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

231 Expenditure or liability incurred in connection with copyright work

- (1) This section applies in any case where—
 - (a) a work was made before the commencement of this Act; and
 - (b) copyright did not exist in the work under the Copyright Act 1962 when the work was made; and
 - (c) on the commencement of this Act, copyright exists in the work pursuant to section 230.
- (2) Where, in any case to which subsection (1) applies, a person incurred any expenditure or liability relating to an act that, at the time the act was done, was not an act restricted by copyright in the work, the person does not do an act restricted by copyright by doing, or continuing to do, that act in respect of the work when copyright exists in the work.
- (3) Notwithstanding subsection (2), an act that under that subsection is not an act restricted by copyright when copyright exists in the work may become an act restricted by copyright if the owner of the copyright or his or her exclusive licensee (if any) pays the person such compensation for the person's expenditure or liability as may be agreed upon or, in default of agreement, as shall be determined by arbitration in accordance with the provisions of the Arbitration Act 1908.

232 Application of Act (other than Part 9) to other entities

- (1) On the recommendation of the Minister, the Governor-General may by Order in Council apply any provision or provisions of this Act (other than a provision of Part 9) to any entity specified in the order (whether a State, part of a State, a territory for whose international relations a State is responsible, a political union, an international organisation, or any other entity).
- (2) To the extent that the nature of the entity permits, an order may apply a provision to an entity so that it has all or any of the following effects:
 - (a) it applies to persons who are citizens or subjects of, or domiciled or resident in, the entity as it applies to persons who are citizens or subjects of, or domiciled or resident in, New Zealand:

- (b) it applies to bodies incorporated under the law of the entity as it applies to bodies incorporated under the law of New Zealand;
 - (c) it applies to works first published in the entity as it applies to works first published in New Zealand;
 - (d) it applies to communication works communicated from any convention country as it applies to communication works communicated from New Zealand.
- (3) An order—
 - (a) may apply a provision unconditionally, or subject to conditions, modifications, or both; and
 - (b) may apply a provision generally, or in relation to works or cases of a particular class or classes.
- (4) The Minister must not recommend the making of an order applying any provision of this Act to any entity unless satisfied that—
 - (a) the entity is a convention country; or
 - (b) provision is or will be made under the law of or applicable to the entity giving reciprocal protection to copyright owners in respect of works generally or (as the case requires) works or cases of the class or classes to which the order applies that provision of this Act.
- (5) If the Government of a State is responsible for the international relations of 1 or more territories, an order may apply a provision to—
 - (a) both the State and the territory (or 1 or more of the territories) concerned; or
 - (b) just the State; or
 - (c) just the territory (or 1 or more of the territories) concerned.
- (6) If—
 - (a) an unpublished work is of unknown authorship, but there are reasonable grounds to suppose that the author was at the material time a citizen or subject of, or domiciled or resident in, an entity other than New Zealand; and
 - (b) an order under this section has applied a provision of this Act to that entity so that it applies to persons who are citizens or subjects of the entity, or are domiciled or

resident there, as it applies to persons who are citizens or subjects of, or domiciled or resident in, New Zealand; and

- (c) a person is authorised under the law of or applicable to the entity to represent the author, or protect and enforce the rights of the author in relation to the work,—
the authorised person must be treated as if he or she were the author of the work for the purposes of the provision.

Section 232: substituted, on 14 October 1999, by section 3(1) of the Copyright Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 124).

Section 232(2)(d): substituted, on 31 October 2008, by section 95 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

233 Denial of copyright to persons connected with countries not giving adequate protection to New Zealand works

- (1) Whenever it appears to the Governor-General that the law of a country, other than a convention country, fails to give adequate protection to copyright in New Zealand works, or to 1 or more classes of such works, the Governor-General may by Order in Council make provision in accordance with this section restricting the rights conferred by this Act in relation to that country.
- (2) An Order in Council made under this section shall designate the country concerned and provide that, for the purposes specified in the order, works first published after a date specified in the order shall not be treated as qualifying for copyright by virtue of such publication if at that time the authors are—
- (a) citizens or subjects of that country (not domiciled or resident in New Zealand); or
- (b) bodies incorporated under the law of that country;—
and the order may make such provision for all purposes of this Act or for such purposes as are specified in the order, and either generally or in relation to such classes of cases as are specified in the order, having regard to the nature and extent of the failure referred to in subsection (1).
- (3) An Order in Council under this section may be so made as to apply generally to a country, or to any territories for whose international relations the Government of that country is re-

sponsible, or to the country exclusive of all or any such territories.

(4) In this section,—

New Zealand works means works of which the author was at the material time a person to whom section 18 applied

works means literary, dramatic, musical, and artistic works, sound recordings, and films.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 51; Copyright Act 1968 s 185 (Aust); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 s 160 (UK)

234 Regulations

The Governor-General may from time to time, by Order in Council, make regulations for all or any of the following purposes:

- (a) prescribing a body as a judicial body for the purposes of this Act:
- (b) prescribing classes of libraries for the purposes of section 50:
- (c) prescribing institutions for the purposes of section 117:
- (d) prescribing bodies for the purposes of section 69 or section 72 or section 89 or section 90 or section 185 or section 190 or section 191:
- (e) prescribing classes of communication works for the purposes of section 90 or section 191:
- (ea) prescribing the form of a notice of infringement for the purposes of section 92D:
- (f) prescribing the form in which a notice is to be given under section 136(1):
- (g) prescribing the particulars to be contained in a notice given under section 136(1):
- (h) requiring a person giving a notice under section 136(1), either at the time of giving the notice or subsequently, to furnish evidence in support of the claim that an item is a work in which the person owns the copyright:
- (i) requiring—
 - (i) a person giving a notice under section 136(1), either at the time of giving the notice or subsequently; or

- (ii) a person to whom an item is to be or has been released from detention under section 140(1)—to give security or an indemnity, or both, to such persons, of such amount, and on such terms and conditions as may be determined by the chief executive of the New Zealand Customs Service:
- (j) providing for exceptions to any requirement to give security or an indemnity imposed by any regulations made under paragraph (i):
- (k) providing for the disposition of any security given under any regulations made under paragraph (i):
- (l) providing for the forfeiture to the claimant, by consent, of an item detained under section 140(1):
- (m) prescribing a fee for the purposes of section 144(2)(c):
- (n) imposing requirements in respect of licensing bodies or any specified class or classes of licensing body or any specified licensing body, in relation to all or any of the following matters:
 - (i) the contents of the constitution or other form of rules of the licensing body or bodies:
 - (ii) the representation of copyright owners in the management of the licensing body or bodies:
 - (iii) the collection, holding, and distribution of money by the licensing body or bodies:
 - (iv) the disclosure of the financial affairs of the licensing body or bodies:
 - (v) access to, and disclosure of, records held by the licensing body or bodies:
 - (vi) any other matter relating to the conduct or the operation of the licensing body or bodies:
- (o) authorising, subject to such conditions as may be specified in the regulations, the rental to the public of copies of—
 - (i) any specified class or classes of computer programs; or
 - (ii) any specified class or classes of sound recordings; or
 - (iii) any film or specified class or classes of films,—

without the consent of the owner of the copyright in the work:

- (p) regulating the making, importation, sale, hire, or use of decoding equipment:
- (q) prescribing offences in respect of the contravention of or non-compliance with any provision of any regulations made under paragraph (p), and prescribing fines, not exceeding \$5,000, that may, on summary conviction, be imposed in respect of any such offences:
- (r) providing for such matters as are contemplated by or necessary for giving full effect to this Act and for its due administration.

Compare: 1962 No 33 ss 29(4), (5), 66

Section 234(e): amended, on 31 October 2008, by section 96(1) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 234(ea): inserted, on 31 October 2008, by section 96(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27).

Section 234(i): amended, on 1 October 1996, by section 289(1) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Transitional provisions and savings

235 Transitional provisions and savings

The transitional provisions in Schedule 1 shall have effect for the purposes of this Act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 68(1)

236 Consequential amendments and repeals

- (1) The enactments specified in Schedule 2 are hereby amended in the manner indicated in that schedule.
 - (2) The enactments specified in Schedule 3 are hereby repealed.
 - (3) The regulations specified in Schedule 4 are hereby revoked.
-

Schedule 1

s 235

Transitional provisions and savings**1 Interpretation**

- (1) In this schedule, unless the context otherwise requires,—
- the 1913 Act** means the Copyright Act 1913
- the 1962 Act** means the Copyright Act 1962
- the 1985 Amendment** means the Copyright Amendment Act 1985
- the new copyright provisions** means the provisions of this Act
- work** means,—
- (a) in relation to the 1913 Act, any thing recognised by that Act as a subject of copyright; and
- (b) in relation to the 1962 Act, any thing recognised by that Act as a subject of copyright.
- (2) References in this schedule to **commencement**, without more, are to the date on which the new copyright provisions come into force.
- (3) For the purposes of this schedule, a work of which the making extended over a period shall be taken to have been made when its making was completed.
- (4) Unless the context otherwise requires, provisions of the 1913 Act or the 1962 Act referred to in this schedule shall be taken as continuing in force for the purposes of this schedule, notwithstanding the repeal of the 1913 Act and the 1962 Act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 47(2); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 1, 2(1) (UK)

2 Continuity of the law

- (1) A reference in an enactment, instrument, or other document to copyright that, apart from this Act, would be construed as referring to copyright under the 1962 Act or any corresponding earlier enactment, shall be construed, so far as may be required for continuing its effect, as being, or as the case may require including, a reference to copyright under this Act.
- (2) A reference in an enactment, instrument, or other document to a work in which copyright exists that, apart from this Act, would be construed as referring to a work in which copyright

exists under the 1962 Act or any corresponding earlier enactment, shall be construed, so far as may be required for continuing its effect, as being, or as the case may require including, a reference to a work in which copyright exists under this Act.

- (3) Express or implied references in this Act or any other enactment, instrument, or document to any of the new copyright provisions shall, so far as the context permits, be construed as including, in relation to times, circumstances, and purposes before commencement, a reference to corresponding earlier provisions.
- (4) An express or implied reference in an instrument or other document to a provision repealed by this Act shall be construed, so far as may be required for continuing its effect, as a reference to the corresponding provision of this Act.
- (5) The provisions of this clause have effect subject to any specific transitional and savings provision and to any express amendment made by this Act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 46(1)(a), (b); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 4(2), (4)–(6) (UK)

3 Copyright under new copyright provisions in works in which copyright exists at commencement

- (1) Copyright exists under the new copyright provisions in any work in which copyright existed immediately before commencement.
- (2) For the purposes of subclause (1), a work in which copyright existed immediately before commencement includes a work in which a right was conferred by section 32 of the 1913 Act in substitution for a right existing immediately before the commencement of the 1913 Act.
- (3) Where copyright exists under the new copyright provisions in a work in which copyright existed immediately before commencement, the copyright in that work under the new provisions is subject to any modifications made by the provisions of this schedule.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 38(2); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 2(2)(a), 5(1) (UK)

4 Application of new copyright provisions to works in which copyright exists at commencement

- (1) The new copyright provisions—
 - (a) apply to any work in which copyright existed immediately before commencement; and
 - (b) are deemed to be satisfied, so far as they relate to qualification for copyright, by every work in which copyright existed immediately before commencement.
- (2) For the purposes of subclause (1), a work in which copyright existed immediately before commencement includes a work in which a right was conferred by section 32 of the 1913 Act in substitution for a right existing immediately before the commencement of the 1913 Act.
- (3) Where the new copyright provisions apply to a work in which copyright existed immediately before commencement, the new copyright provisions are subject, in their application to that work, to any modifications made by the provisions of this schedule.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cls 38(2), 47(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 3, 35 (UK)

5 Works may qualify under new copyright provisions

- (1) Subject to subclause (2), a work made before commencement may qualify for copyright after commencement—
 - (a) under section 19; or
 - (b) under section 230; or
 - (c) under an Order in Council made under section 232.
- (2) A work first published in New Zealand before 1 April 1963 does not qualify for copyright under section 19(1)(a) if the work was published elsewhere more than 14 days before the publication in New Zealand.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 2(1); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 5(2) (UK)

6 No copyright under new copyright provisions in certain works

- (1) No copyright exists, under the new copyright provisions, in the following works:

- (a) a film, within the meaning of this Act, made before 1 April 1963:
 - (b) a broadcast made before 1 April 1963:
 - (c) the typographical arrangement of a published edition made before 1 April 1963.
- (2) Section 28 does not confer copyright on a work that was, before 1 April 1963, made by an officer or employee of, or published by, an international organisation to which that section applies.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cls 14, 17, 20, 33; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 7(1), 9 (UK)

Interpretation provisions

7 **Meaning of author**

The question of authorship of a work made before commencement shall be determined in accordance with—

- (a) clause 11(3)(b) in relation to a soundtrack associated with a cinematograph film within the meaning of the 1962 Act:
- (b) clause 12(1) in relation to a film made before 1 April 1963:
- (c) the new copyright provisions for the purposes of the rights conferred by Part 4:
- (d) the law in force at the time the work was made, for all other works and purposes.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 10 (UK)

8 **Meaning of issue to the public**

- (1) Subsections (2) and (3) of section 9 do not apply in relation to a copy of a computer program, sound recording, or film acquired by any person before commencement for the purpose of renting the copy to the public.

- (2) In subclause (1),—

film includes a film that was an original dramatic work within the meaning of the 1913 Act

sound recording includes a contrivance of the kind to which section 25 of the 1913 Act applied.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 2(2)(b), 14(2) (UK)

9 Meaning of publication

Section 10(2) applies only where the construction of the building began after commencement.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 45 (UK)

10 Meaning of infringing copy

For the purposes of section 12, the question of whether the making of an object constituted an infringement of copyright, or would have constituted an infringement of copyright had the object been made in New Zealand, shall be determined,—

- (a) in relation to an object made on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement, by reference to the provisions of the 1962 Act:
- (b) in relation to an object made before 1 April 1963, by reference to the provisions of the 1913 Act.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 14(3) (UK)

Description of copyright**11 Soundtracks to be treated as sound recordings**

- (1) In this clause,—

cinematograph film or **film** has the meaning that cinematograph film had in the 1962 Act

sound recording has the meaning it has in this Act.

- (2) A soundtrack associated with a cinematograph film, being a soundtrack to which the 1962 Act applied before commencement, shall be treated for the purposes of the new copyright provisions not as part of the film, but as a sound recording.
- (3) The following provisions apply to a soundtrack treated as a sound recording under subclause (2):
- (a) copyright exists in the sound recording only if copyright existed in the film immediately before commencement, and it continues to exist until copyright in the film expires:
 - (b) the author and first owner of copyright in the film shall be treated as the author and first owner of the copyright in the sound recording:

- (c) anything done before commencement under or in relation to the copyright in the film continues to have effect in relation to the sound recording.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 8 (UK)

12 Films

- (1) The new copyright provisions have effect in relation to a film—

- (a) that was made before 1 April 1963; and
- (b) that was an original dramatic work within the meaning of the 1913 Act—

as if it were an original dramatic work within the meaning of the new copyright provisions, except that the person who was the author of the work for the purposes of the 1913 Act shall be taken to be the author for the purposes of the new copyright provisions.

- (2) The new copyright provisions in relation to photographs apply in relation to photographs forming part of a film—
 - (a) that was made before 1 April 1963; and
 - (b) that was an original dramatic work within the meaning of the 1913 Act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cls 15, 16; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 7(2), (3) (UK)

Acts restricted by copyright

13 Certain dramatic or musical works published before 1 April 1914

- (1) Where—
 - (a) a dramatic or musical work was published before 1 April 1914; and
 - (b) the copyright that existed immediately before commencement (being the right conferred by section 32 of the 1913 Act in substitution for a right existing immediately before the commencement of the 1913 Act) did not include the sole right to perform the work in public,—

the acts restricted by the copyright under the new copyright provisions shall be treated as not including—

- (c) performing the work in public:

- (d) broadcasting the work or including it in a cable programme:
 - (e) doing any of the above in relation to an adaptation of the work.
- (2) Where—
- (a) a dramatic or musical work was published before 1 April 1914; and
 - (b) the copyright that existed immediately before commencement (being the right conferred by section 32 of the 1913 Act in substitution for a right existing immediately before the commencement of the 1913 Act) consisted only of the sole right to perform the work in public,—
- the acts restricted by the copyright under the new copyright provisions shall be treated as consisting only of the acts of—
- (c) performing the work in public:
 - (d) broadcasting the work or including it in a cable programme:
 - (e) doing any of the above in relation to an adaptation of the work.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cls 38, 40; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 17 (UK)

Ownership of copyright

14 First ownership

The question of first ownership of copyright in a work made before commencement shall be determined in accordance with the law in force at the time the work was made.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 11(1)(UK)

15 Certain literary works made before 1 April 1963

Where a literary work—

- (a) was made before 1 April 1963; and
 - (b) was made in the course of the author's employment;—
- the ownership of copyright in the work, under section 8(1)(b) of the 1913 Act, by the person by whom the author was employed shall be subject to a right in the author to restrain the publication of the work otherwise than as part of a newspaper,

magazine, or similar periodical (being the right referred to in paragraph (b) of the proviso to section 8(1) of the 1913 Act).

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 7(2)

16 Certain literary works published before 1 April 1914

Where a literary work—

- (a) was published before 1 April 1914; and
- (b) consists of an essay, article, or portion forming part of and first published in a review, magazine, or other periodical or work of a like nature,—

any copyright in that work under the new copyright provisions is subject to the right of the author to publish the essay, article, or portion in a separate form at the end of the period of 28 years from its first publication in a review, magazine, or other periodical or work of a like nature (being the right referred to in section 18 of the Copyright Act 1842 (UK)).

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 41; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 18 (UK)

Duration of copyright

17 Duration of copyright in works generally

- (1) In this clause,—

dramatic work includes a film of the kind to which the definition of dramatic work in section 2(1) of the 1913 Act applied
generated by computer, in relation to a work, means that the work is generated by computer in circumstances such that there is no human author of the work

sound recording includes a contrivance of the kind to which section 25 of the 1913 Act applied.

- (2) In relation to—

- (a) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work that was generated by computer before commencement, section 22(2) applies; and
- (b) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work (other than a photograph) of joint authorship published before 1 April 1963, the period of the copyright is the longer of the periods of—

- (i) the life of the author who died first and a term of 50 years after his or her death; and
 - (ii) the life of the author who died last; and
 - (c) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work (other than a photograph) of joint authorship made before commencement but not published before 1 April 1963, section 22(6) applies; and
 - (d) a work of unknown authorship, being a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work (other than a photograph),—
 - (i) if the work was published before commencement, subsections (3) to (5) of section 22 apply; and
 - (ii) if the work was unpublished before commencement, copyright exists until the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the new copyright provisions come into force or, if during that period the work is first made available to the public within the meaning of subsection (4) of section 22, the date on which copyright expires under subsection (3) of that section; and
 - (e) a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work made before commencement, other than a work to which paragraphs (a) to (d) or clause 18 or clause 19 applies, section 22(1) applies.
- (3) If, in any case to which subclause (2)(d)(ii) applies, the identity of the author becomes known before the date on which the copyright would otherwise have expired, copyright expires in accordance with section 22(1).
- (4) In relation to—
- (a) a sound recording made before commencement, section 23(1) applies; and
 - (b) a cinematograph film, within the meaning of the 1962 Act, made on or after 1 April 1963 and before the commencement, section 23(1) applies; and
 - (c) a broadcast made—
 - (i) on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement, section 24(1) applies:

- (ii) before 1 April 1963, section 24(2) applies as if such a broadcast had not been made; and
- (d) the typographical arrangement of any published edition made on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement, section 25 applies; and
- (e) a work made by or under the direction or control of the Crown before commencement (other than a work to which section 27 applies), section 26(3) applies; and
- (f) a work that was, on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement, made by an officer or employee of, or published by, an international organisation to which section 28 applies, section 28(2) applies.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 11; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 9, 12(3), (6) (UK)

18 Duration of copyright in certain works made on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement

- (1) In relation to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work (other than a photograph)—
 - (a) made on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement; and
 - (b) the author of which died before commencement; and
 - (c) that was not, after the death of the author and before commencement, published or performed in public or included in a broadcast, or offered for sale to the public on a record,—copyright exists until the end of the period of 75 years from the end of the calendar year in which the author died.
- (2) In relation to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work (other than a photograph)—
 - (a) made on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement; and
 - (b) the author of which died before commencement; and
 - (c) that was, after the death of the author and before commencement, published or performed in public or included in a broadcast, or offered for sale to the public on a record,—copyright exists until the expiry of the shorter of the following periods:

- (d) 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which an act referred to in paragraph (c) was first done:
- (e) 75 years from the end of the calendar year in which the author died.

Compare: 1962 No 33 s 8(1)(b)

19 Duration of copyright in certain works made before 1 April 1963

In relation to a literary, dramatic, or musical work or an engraving—

- (a) made before 1 April 1963; and
- (b) the author of which died before 1 April 1963; and
- (c) in which copyright existed immediately before the death of the author or, where the work was of joint authorship, at or before the death of the author who died last; and
- (d) being a literary, dramatic, or musical work or an engraving that was published, or being a dramatic or musical work that was performed in public, or being a lecture that was delivered in public after the death of the author and before 1 April 1963,—

copyright exists until the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the year that includes the earliest occasion on which the work,—

- (e) being a literary, dramatic, or musical work or an engraving, was published; or
- (f) being a dramatic or musical work, was performed in public; or
- (g) being a lecture, was delivered in public.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 6

Crown copyright

20 Crown copyright

The provisions of section 26 apply to a work made before commencement if—

- (a) section 52 of the 1962 Act applied to the work immediately before commencement; and
- (b) the work is not one to which section 27 applies.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 40 (UK)

Infringement of copyright

21 Acts done before commencement

The provisions of the 1962 Act that specify acts constituting infringements of copyright continue to apply in relation to acts done before commencement.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 14(1)(UK)

22 Acts done after commencement

The provisions of this Act that specify acts constituting infringements of copyright apply only in relation to acts done after commencement.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 14(1)(UK)

23 Infringement by issue of copies to public

- (1) Where a person gave the notice required under the proviso to section 6 of the 1913 Act before the repeal of that section, that proviso and section 22(1) of the 1913 Act shall, in relation to copies of the relevant work made by that person after commencement, have effect as if that proviso and section 22(1) had been re-enacted in this Act as a proviso to section 31.
- (2) For the purposes of the operation of the proviso to section 6 of the 1913 Act,—
 - (a) any regulations made before the repeal of that section shall have effect as if they had been made under this Act; and
 - (b) the power of the Governor-General in Council to make further regulations under that section shall apply as if the proviso had been re-enacted in this Act as a proviso to section 31.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 10

24 Importing infringing copy

For the purposes of section 35, if a person knows or has reason to believe that an object made before commencement and imported by that person into New Zealand after commencement would have been an infringing copy if the question had fallen to be determined under the provisions of the 1962 Act or, as the case may be, the 1913 Act, that person shall be deemed to

know or to have reason to believe that the object is an infringing copy under this Act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cls 8, 21

Acts permitted in relation to copyright works

25 Incidental copying of copyright work

Where the acts described in section 41(1)(b) or (c) are done after commencement, it shall be assumed that all the provisions of section 41 were in force at all material times.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 14(4) (UK)

26 Acts permitted on assumptions as to expiry of copyright or death of author in relation to anonymous or pseudonymous works

Section 67(1)(b)(ii) applies—

- (a) to a work of unknown authorship that was unpublished before commencement, being a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work (other than a photograph), only after the end of the period of 50 years from the end of the calendar year in which the new copyright provisions come into force; and
- (b) to a work referred to in clause 17, if the work is one to which, under that clause, a section of this Act applies.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 15(3) (UK)

27 Representation of certain artistic works on public display

Where the acts described in section 73(3) are done after commencement, it shall be assumed that all the provisions of section 73 were in force at all material times.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 14(4) (UK)

Special exceptions from protection of artistic works that have been applied industrially

28 Artistic works made before 1 April 1963

- (1) No copyright exists in an artistic work that—
 - (a) was made before 1 April 1963; and

- (b) at the time when the work was made, constituted a design capable of registration under the Designs Act 1953 or under the enactments repealed by that Act; and
 - (c) has been used as a model or pattern to be multiplied by an industrial process or is intended to be so used.
- (2) For the purposes of subclause (1)(c), a design shall be deemed to have been used, or to be intended to be used, as a model or pattern to be multiplied by any industrial process—
- (a) when the design is copied or is intended to be copied on more than 50 single objects, unless all the objects in which the design is copied or intended to be copied together form only a single set of articles as defined in section 2(1) of the Designs Act 1953; or
 - (b) when the design is applied to, or is intended to be applied to,—
 - (i) printed paper hangings; or
 - (ii) carpets, floorcloths, or oilcloths, manufactured or sold in lengths or pieces; or
 - (iii) textile-piece goods, or textile goods manufactured or sold in lengths or pieces; or
 - (iv) lace, not made by hand.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 9; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 6 (UK)

29 Literary and artistic works made on or after 1 April 1963

- (1) Nothing in section 74(1) shall apply to or affect—
- (a) the settlement of any action or claim made before the commencement of the 1985 Amendment; or
 - (b) any proceedings completed before the commencement of the 1985 Amendment; or
 - (c) any proceedings instituted or commenced before the commencement of the 1985 Amendment in which the trial of the substantive matters in issue had commenced on or before that commencement.
- (2) Where, at commencement, a copy of a literary or artistic work exists, and the making of that copy is excluded by section 74(2) from being authorised by section 74(1), that copy is not an infringing object for the purposes of this Act.

- (3) Where, at commencement, a copy of an artistic work exists, and the making of that copy is excluded by section 75(3) from being authorised by section 75(1), that copy is not an infringing object for the purposes of this Act.
- (4) Where—
- (a) an object or reproduction made pursuant to section 20B of the 1962 Act exists at commencement; and
 - (b) that object is a copy in 3 dimensions of—
 - (i) a work of artistic craftsmanship; or
 - (ii) a sculpture that is not a cast or pattern for an object that has a primarily utilitarian function; or
 - (iii) a work of architecture, being a building or a model for a building;—and that reproduction is a reproduction in 2 dimensions reasonably required for the making of the object,—
- that object or copy is not an infringing object for the purposes of this Act.

Compare: 1985 No 134 s 4(3)

30 Models made before the commencement of the 1985 Amendment

Copyright does not exist by virtue of any amendment made to the 1962 Act by the 1985 Amendment in any model made before the commencement of the 1985 Amendment.

Compare: 1985 No 134 s 10

31 Reconstruction of buildings

In section 78, the reference to the owner of the copyright in the drawings or plans is, in relation to buildings constructed before commencement, to the person who at the time of the construction was the owner of the copyright in the drawings or plans under the 1962 Act, the 1913 Act, or any enactment repealed by the 1913 Act.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 23(2); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 14(7) (UK)

32 Incidental recording for purposes of broadcast or cable programme

Section 85 does not apply where the authority to broadcast a work or include it in a cable programme was given before 1 April 1963.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 22

Moral rights

33 Moral rights

- (1) No act done before commencement is actionable under any provision of Part 4.
- (2) Section 62 of the 1962 Act continues to apply in relation to acts done on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement.
Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 37; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 22 (UK)

34 Application of moral rights

- (1) Subject to subclause (5), the following provisions of this clause have effect in relation to—
 - (a) the rights conferred by section 94; and
 - (b) the rights conferred by section 98.
- (2) The rights described in subclause (1) do not apply—
 - (a) in relation to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work of which the author died before commencement;
or
 - (b) in relation to a film made before commencement.
- (3) The rights described in subclause (1) in relation to a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work made before commencement do not apply,—
 - (a) where copyright first vested in the author, to anything that by virtue of an assignment of copyright made or licence granted before commencement may be done without infringing copyright; or
 - (b) where copyright first vested in a person other than the author, to anything done by or with the licence of the copyright owner.

- (4) The rights described in subclause (1) do not apply to anything done in relation to a record made in pursuance of sections 22 and 23 of the 1962 Act.
- (5) The rights conferred by section 94 do not apply in respect of any work in which, before commencement, the copyright vested in the employer of the author or director, unless the author or director has previously been identified as such in or on published copies of the work.
- (6) In this clause, the term **dramatic work** includes a film of the kind to which the definition of dramatic work in section 2(1) of the 1913 Act applied.
Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 23 (UK)

35 Right to privacy of certain photographs and films

The right conferred by section 105 does not apply to photographs taken or films made before commencement.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 24 (UK)

Dealing with rights in copyright works

36 Licences

Section 111(2) does not apply in relation to an exclusive licence granted before commencement.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 29 (UK)

37 Documents or events before commencement

- (1) Where copyright exists in a work under the new copyright provisions, any document that—
- (a) was made before commencement; and
 - (b) had any operation affecting the title to copyright in the work under the 1913 Act, or would have had such an operation if the 1913 Act had continued in force; or
 - (c) had any operation affecting the title to copyright in the work under the 1962 Act or would have had such an operation if the 1962 Act had continued in force,—
- shall, subject to subclause (2), have the corresponding operation in relation to copyright in the work under the new copyright provisions.

- (2) If the operation of any such document was or would have been limited to a period specified in the document, it shall not have any operation in relation to the copyright under the new copyright provisions, except in so far as that period extends beyond commencement.
- (3) For the purposes of the operation of a document in accordance with subclause (1),—
- (a) expressions used in the document shall be construed in accordance with their effect immediately before commencement, notwithstanding that a different meaning is assigned to them for the purposes of this Act; and
 - (b) section 116 shall not apply in respect of any agreement made before 1 April 1963.
- (4) Where copyright exists in a work under the new copyright provisions, any event that—
- (a) occurred before commencement; and
 - (b) had any operation affecting the title to copyright in the work under the 1913 Act, or would have had such an operation if the 1913 Act had continued in force; or
 - (c) had any operation affecting the title to copyright in the work under the 1962 Act or would have had such an operation if the 1962 Act had continued in force,—
- shall have the corresponding operation in relation to copyright in the work under the new copyright provisions.
- (5) In this clause,—
- copyright in the work under the 1913 Act** includes, in relation to a film, any copyright under the 1913 Act in the film in so far as it constituted a dramatic work for the purposes of the 1913 Act and any copyright under the 1913 Act in photographs forming part of the film
- operation affecting the title** means any operation affecting the ownership of that copyright, or creating, transferring, or terminating an interest, right, or licence in respect of that copyright.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 36(1), (2), (4)(b), (5); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 25, 26(1) (UK)

38 Certain assignments or licences on or after 1 April 1914 and before 1 April 1963

- (1) Where a document to which clause 37(1) applies is an assignment made or a licence granted—
 - (a) on or after 1 April 1914 and before 1 April 1963; and
 - (b) by the author of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work, where the author is the first owner of copyright in the work; and
 - (c) otherwise than by will,—
the assignment or licence shall not be operative to vest in the assignee or licensee any rights with respect to copyright in the work beyond the expiration of 25 years from the death of the author.
- (2) After commencement and during the life of the author, the author may assign the reversionary interest in the copyright expectant on the termination of the period specified in subclause (1).
- (3) If the author does not make an assignment as permitted by subclause (2), the reversionary interest in the copyright expectant on the termination of the period specified in subclause (1) shall, on the author's death, devolve on his or her legal personal representatives as part of his or her estate.
- (4) Nothing in this clause affects—
 - (a) an assignment of the reversionary interest by a person to whom it has been assigned; or
 - (b) an assignment of the reversionary interest after the death of the author by his or her personal representatives or any person becoming entitled to it; or
 - (c) any assignment of the copyright after the reversionary interest has fallen in.
- (5) Nothing in this clause applies to the assignment of the copyright in a collective work or a licence to publish a work or part of a work as part of a collective work.
- (6) In subclause (5), the term **collective work** means—
 - (a) any encyclopaedia, dictionary, yearbook, or similar work:
 - (b) a newspaper, review, magazine, or similar periodical:

- (c) any work written in distinct parts by different authors, or in which works or parts of works of different authors are incorporated.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 36(3); Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 27 (UK)

39 Assignments or grants made before 1 April 1914

- (1) This clause applies where the author of a literary, dramatic, musical, or artistic work published before 1 April 1914 assigned or granted, before 1 April 1914, an interest in the copyright or performing right in the work for the full term of that right under the law in force before the 1913 Act (being such an assignment or grant as was mentioned in paragraph (a) of the proviso to section 32(1) of the 1913 Act).
- (2) If, before commencement, any thing was done in relation to the copyright in the work under paragraph (a) of the proviso to section 32(1) of the 1913 Act, that thing has a corresponding operation under the new copyright provisions.
- (3) Any right that, before commencement,—
 - (a) was exercisable in relation to the work or copyright in it under paragraph (a) of the proviso to section 32(1) of the 1913 Act; or
 - (b) would have been exercisable in relation to the work or copyright in it under paragraph (a) of the proviso to section 32(1) of the 1913 Act, if that provision had continued in force—is exercisable in relation to the work or copyright in it under the new copyright provisions.
- (4) If, in accordance with paragraph (a) of the proviso to section 32(1) of the 1913 Act, copyright would have reverted to the author or his or her personal representatives on the date referred to in that paragraph, and that date falls after commencement, then, on that date—
 - (a) the copyright in the work shall revert to the author or his or her personal representatives, as the case may be; and
 - (b) any interest of any other person in the copyright that exists on that date by virtue of any document made be-

fore the commencement of the 1913 Act shall cease to exist.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 42; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 28 (UK)

40 Copyright to pass under will with unpublished works

(1) Section 115—

- (a) does not apply where the testator died before 1 April 1963; and
- (b) where the testator died on or after that date and before commencement, applies only in relation to an original document embodying a work.

- (2) In the case of an author who died before 1 April 1963, the ownership after the author's death of a manuscript of the author, where such ownership has been acquired under a testamentary disposition made by the author and the manuscript is of a work that has not been published or performed in public, is prima facie proof of the copyright being with the owner of the manuscript.

Compare: Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 30 (UK)

Remedies for infringement

41 Remedies for infringement

- (1) The following provisions apply in relation to an infringement of copyright:

- (a) in relation to an infringement of copyright committed after commencement, sections 120 to 122 apply;
- (b) in relation to an infringement of copyright committed on or after 1 April 1963 and before commencement, sections 24 and 25 of the 1962 Act and section 6(2) of the 1985 Amendment continue to apply;
- (c) in relation to an infringement of copyright committed before 1 April 1963, sections 9(1) and (2) and 10 to 13 of the 1913 Act continue to apply.

- (2) The following provisions apply in relation to the rights and remedies of an exclusive licensee:

- (a) sections 123 and 124 apply where sections 120 to 122 apply:

- (b) section 26 of the 1962 Act continues to apply where sections 24 and 25 of that Act continue to apply:
 - (c) sections 123 and 124 of this Act and section 26 of the 1962 Act do not apply to a licence granted before 1 April 1963.
- (3) The following provisions apply in relation to presumptions:
- (a) sections 126 to 129 apply only in proceedings brought under this Act:
 - (b) sections 27 and 27A of the 1962 Act continue to apply to proceedings brought under that Act:
 - (c) section 9(3) of the 1913 Act continues to apply to proceedings brought under that Act.
- (4) The following provisions apply in relation to criminal liability for making or dealing with infringing objects:
- (a) in relation to acts done after commencement, section 131 applies:
 - (b) in relation to acts done before commencement, including acts done before 1 April 1963, section 28 of the 1962 Act continues to apply.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cls 25–28; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 paras 31–33 (UK)

Effect of notices given under section 22 or section 29 of the Copyright Act 1962

42 Records of musical works

- (1) Where, before commencement, a person gave notice under section 22(1)(b) of the 1962 Act of his or her intention to make or import a record of a musical work, any making or importing of the record by that person after commencement shall not be an infringement of any copyright in the musical work if the conditions set out in section 22 of the 1962 Act are fulfilled.
- (2) The provisions of—
- (a) sections 22 and 23 of the 1962 Act; and
 - (b) regulations 3(2) and 4 to 7 of the Copyright (Record Royalties) Regulations 1963—

that are in force immediately before commencement shall continue to apply for the purpose of completing or perfecting any matter in progress immediately before commencement.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 24; Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988 Schedule 1 para 21 (UK)

43 Notice may be given to chief executive of New Zealand Customs Service

- (1) Subject to subclause (2), where, before commencement, a notice was given in respect of a work under section 29 of the 1962 Act, and that notice had not been withdrawn and had not otherwise ceased to have effect before commencement, the notice shall have effect after commencement as if it had been accepted under section 136, and section 136 shall apply with any necessary modifications.
- (2) The notice shall, upon commencement, cease to have any effect in respect of—
 - (a) any items sold in another country by or with the consent of the owner of the copyright in that country; and
 - (b) any items in transit to a country other than New Zealand.

Compare: 1962 No 33 Schedule 1 cl 29

Schedule 1 clause 43 heading: amended, on 1 October 1996, pursuant to section 294(3) of the Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27).

Schedule 2
Enactments amended

s 236(1)

Antiquities Act 1975 (1975 No 41) (RS Vol 26, p 31)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

Archives Act 1957 (1957 No 13) (RS Vol 1, p 127)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

Commerce Act 1986 (1986 No 5) (RS Vol 31, p 71)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

Disputes Tribunals Act 1988 (1988 No 110)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

Enemy Property Act 1951 (1951 No 48) (RS Vol 6, p 317)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

**Films, Videos, and Publications Classification Act 1993 (1993
No 94)**

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

Layout Designs Act 1994 (1994 No 116)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

**Ministry of Agriculture and Fisheries Act 1953 (1953 No 7) (RS
Vol 18, p 509)**

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

National Library Act 1965 (1965 No 136) (RS Vol 11, p 225)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

Public Works Act 1981 (1981 No 35)

Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).

Survey Act 1986 (1986 No 123)*Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).*

**Schedule 3
Enactments repealed**

s 236(2)

Broadcasting Act 1989 (1989 No 25)*Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).***Copyright Act 1962 (1962 No 33)****Copyright Amendment Act 1967 (1967 No 65)****Copyright Amendment Act 1971 (1971 No 91)****Copyright Amendment Act 1985 (1985 No 134)****Copyright Amendment Act 1986 (1986 No 81)****Copyright Amendment Act 1989 (1989 No 112)****Copyright Amendment Act 1990 (1990 No 71)****Decimal Currency Act 1964 (1964 No 27)***Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).***Summary Proceedings Act 1957 (1957 No 87)***Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).*

Schedule 4
Regulations revoked

s 236(3)

Copyright Amending Regulations 1946 (SR 1946/142)

Copyright Amending Regulations 1955 (SR 1955/45)

Copyright (Customs) Regulations 1963 (SR 1963/85)

Copyright (International Conventions) Order 1964 (SR 1964/53)

**Copyright (International Conventions) Order 1964,
Amendment No 1 (SR 1979/64)**

Copyright (Record Royalties) Regulations 1963 (SR 1963/84)

Copyright Regulations 1913 (*Gazette* Vol I 1914, p 1325)

**Works the Importation of which is prohibited under the
Copyright Act 1913 (*Gazette* Vol I 1925, p 16)**

Copyright Amendment Act 1999

Public Act 1999 No 124
Date of assent 14 October 1999
Commencement 14 October 1999

1 Short Title

This Act may be cited as the Copyright Amendment Act 1999, and is part of the Copyright Act 1999 (“the principal Act”).

2 Application of Part 9 to other entities

(1), (2) *Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).*

(3) The substitution by subsection (1) of a new section 204 of the principal Act for the existing section does not affect any order made under the existing section; and any such order may be amended or revoked by an order made under the substituted section.

3 Application of Act (other than Part 9) to other entities

(1), (2) *Amendment(s) incorporated in the Act(s).*

(3) The substitution by subsection (1) of a new section 232 of the principal Act for the existing section does not affect any order made under the existing section; and any such order may be amended or revoked by an order made under the substituted section.

**Copyright (New Technologies)
Amendment Act 2008
Commencement Order (No 2) 2008**
(SR 2008/411)

Anand Satyanand, Governor-General

Order in Council

At Wellington this 20th day of October 2008

Present:

The Right Hon Helen Clark presiding in Council

Pursuant to section 2(2) of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008, His Excellency the Governor-General, acting on the advice and with the consent of the Executive Council, makes the following order.

Order

1 Title

This order is the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 Commencement Order (No 2) 2008.

2 Commencement

- (1) The following provisions of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 come into force on 31 October 2008:
 - (a) sections 1 to 19(1):
 - (b) sections 20 to 47:
 - (c) sections 49 to 84:
 - (d) sections 86 to 96.
- (2) However, the commencement by subclause (1)(c) of section 53 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment

Act 2008 does not bring section 92A of the Copyright Act 1994 into force.

Clause 2(2): substituted, on 26 March 2009, by clause 4 of the Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 Commencement Amendment Order (No 2) 2009 (SR 2009/51).

Rebecca Kitteridge,
Clerk of the Executive Council.

Date of notification in *Gazette*: 23 October 2008.

Contents

- 1 General
 - 2 Status of reprints
 - 3 How reprints are prepared
 - 4 Changes made under section 17C of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989
 - 5 List of amendments incorporated in this reprint (most recent first)
-

Notes

1 *General*

This is a reprint of the Copyright Act 1994. The reprint incorporates all the amendments to the Act as at 7 July 2010, as specified in the list of amendments at the end of these notes. Relevant provisions of any amending enactments that contain transitional, savings, or application provisions that cannot be compiled in the reprint are also included, after the principal enactment, in chronological order. For more information, *see* <http://www.pco.parliament.govt.nz/reprints/>.

2 *Status of reprints*

Under section 16D of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989, reprints are presumed to correctly state, as at the date of the reprint, the law enacted by the principal enactment and by the amendments to that enactment. This presumption applies even though editorial changes authorised by section 17C of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989 have been made in the reprint.

This presumption may be rebutted by producing the official volumes of statutes or statutory regulations in which the principal enactment and its amendments are contained.

3 *How reprints are prepared*

A number of editorial conventions are followed in the preparation of reprints. For example, the enacting words are not included in Acts, and provisions that are repealed or revoked are omitted.

For a detailed list of the editorial conventions, see <http://www.pco.parliament.govt.nz/editorial-conventions/> or Part 8 of the *Tables of New Zealand Acts and Ordinances and Statutory Regulations and Deemed Regulations in Force*.

4 Changes made under section 17C of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989

Section 17C of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989 authorises the making of editorial changes in a reprint as set out in sections 17D and 17E of that Act so that, to the extent permitted, the format and style of the reprinted enactment is consistent with current legislative drafting practice. Changes that would alter the effect of the legislation are not permitted. A new format of legislation was introduced on 1 January 2000. Changes to legislative drafting style have also been made since 1997, and are ongoing. To the extent permitted by section 17C of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989, all legislation reprinted after 1 January 2000 is in the new format for legislation and reflects current drafting practice at the time of the reprint.

In outline, the editorial changes made in reprints under the authority of section 17C of the Acts and Regulations Publication Act 1989 are set out below, and they have been applied, where relevant, in the preparation of this reprint:

- omission of unnecessary referential words (such as “of this section” and “of this Act”)
- typeface and type size (Times Roman, generally in 11.5 point)
- layout of provisions, including:
 - indentation
 - position of section headings (eg, the number and heading now appear above the section)
- format of definitions (eg, the defined term now appears in bold type, without quotation marks)
- format of dates (eg, a date formerly expressed as “the 1st day of January 1999” is now expressed as “1 January 1999”)

- position of the date of assent (it now appears on the front page of each Act)
- punctuation (eg, colons are not used after definitions)
- Parts numbered with roman numerals are replaced with arabic numerals, and all cross-references are changed accordingly
- case and appearance of letters and words, including:
 - format of headings (eg, headings where each word formerly appeared with an initial capital letter followed by small capital letters are amended so that the heading appears in bold, with only the first word (and any proper nouns) appearing with an initial capital letter)
 - small capital letters in section and subsection references are now capital letters
- schedules are renumbered (eg, Schedule 1 replaces First Schedule), and all cross-references are changed accordingly
- running heads (the information that appears at the top of each page)
- format of two-column schedules of consequential amendments, and schedules of repeals (eg, they are rearranged into alphabetical order, rather than chronological).

5 *List of amendments incorporated in this reprint
(most recent first)*

Copyright Amendment Act 2010 (2010 No 55)

Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 Commencement
Amendment Order (No 2) 2009 (SR 2009/51)

Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 Commencement Order
(No 2) 2008 (SR 2008/411)

Policing Act 2008 (2008 No 72): section 116(a)(ii)

Copyright (New Technologies) Amendment Act 2008 (2008 No 27)

Evidence Act 2006 (2006 No 69): section 216

Insolvency Act 2006 (2006 No 55): section 445

Education Amendment Act 2006 (2006 No 19): section 60(1)

Lawyers and Conveyancers Act 2006 (2006 No 1): section 348

Public Records Act 2005 (2005 No 40): section 67(1)

Copyright Amendment Act 2005 (2005 No 33)

Copyright (Parallel Importation of Films and Onus of Proof) Amendment Act 2003 (2003 No 111)
Trade Marks Act 2002 (2002 No 49): section 201
Sentencing Act 2002 (2002 No 9): section 186
Public Trust Act 2001 (2001 No 100): section 170(1)
Public Audit Act 2001 (2001 No 10): section 53
Copyright Act Commencement Order 2000 (SR 2000/245)
Copyright Amendment Act 1999 (1999 No 124)
Interpretation Act 1999 (1999 No 85): section 38
Copyright (Removal of Prohibition on Parallel Importing) Amendment Act 1998 (1998 No 20)
Copyright Amendment Act 1997 (1997 No 38)
Copyright Amendment Act 1996 (1996 No 28)
Customs and Excise Act 1996 (1996 No 27): sections 289(1), 294(3)
Department of Justice (Restructuring) Act 1995 (1995 No 39): section 10(3)
